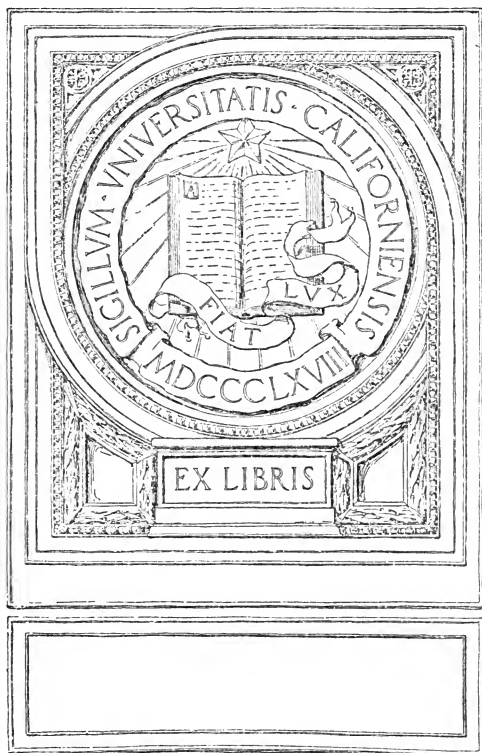
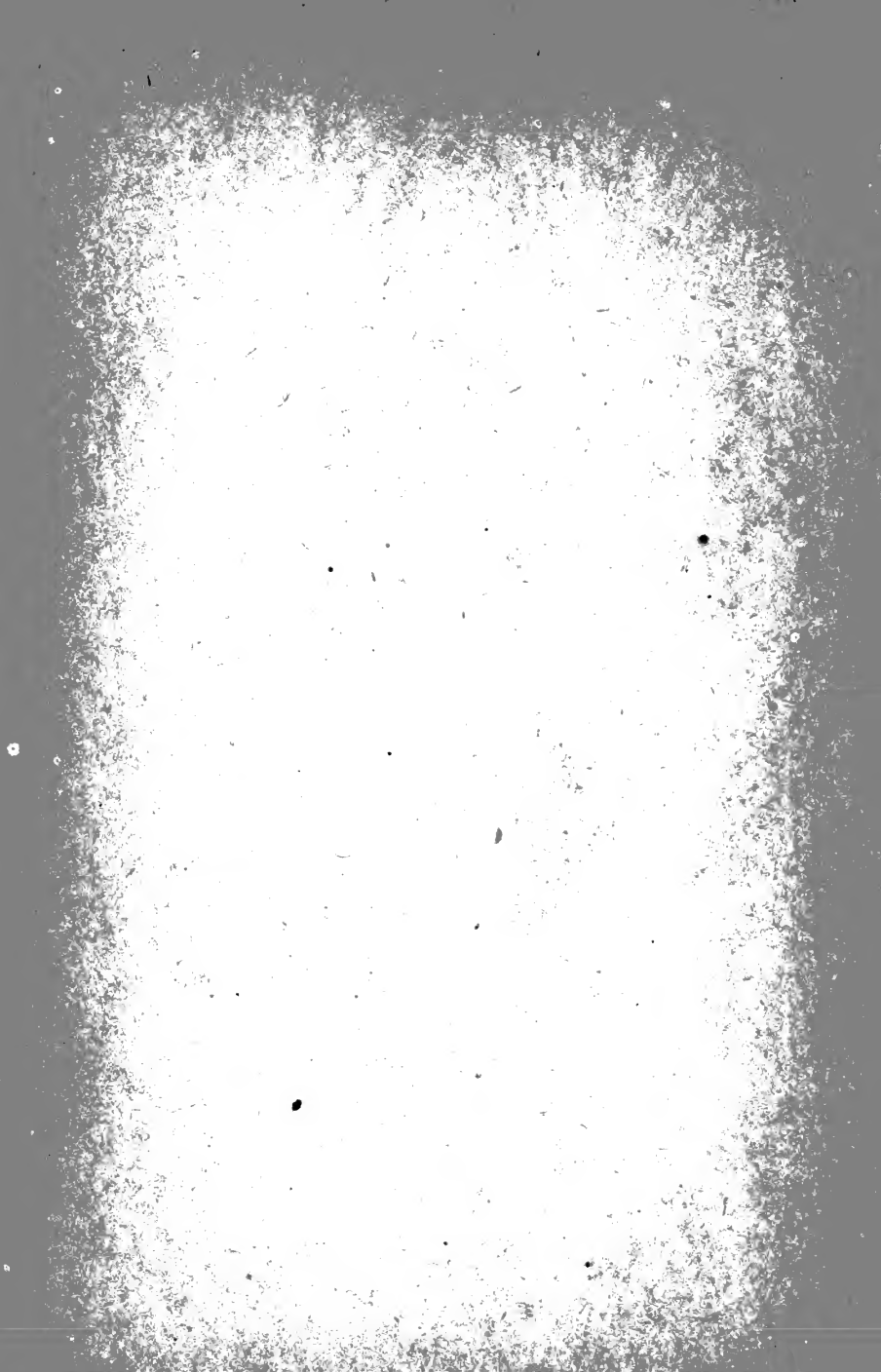


GIFT OF
Provost
Monroe E. Deutsch



Munroe E. Deutsch.

June 4, 1904.



TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

CLASSICAL SECTION

EDITED BY

JOHN HENRY WRIGHT,	HARVARD UNIVERSITY
BERNADOTTE PERRIN,	YALE UNIVERSITY
ANDREW FLEMING WEST,	PRINCETON UNIVERSITY

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS

A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE, PH.D.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR IN HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW YORK
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

1903

By *Phonol Nova & Reuloch*

760

M821

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY

[Faint, illegible text, possibly a library stamp or bleed-through]

PREFACE

THIS First Latin Book is intended to provide the necessary preparation for the reading of Nepos and Caesar. Whatever objections may be urged against the custom, the fact remains that the majority of schools begin these authors immediately, or very soon, after the first book is completed, and therefore the beginner must be prepared as fully as possible for this reading. To provide this preparation, the 850 words most frequent in Caesar's *Gallic War* and Nepos's *Lives* were selected to form the main vocabulary of this book; then, since every art is acquired only by the frequent practice of the same or similar exercise, each word, with few exceptions, has been used eight times or more in the sentences for translation. Although this repetition and the large type chosen to relieve the pupil's eyes may at first glance make the exercises seem long to some teachers, the author holds that the principle of frequent use is of vital importance, and believes that in no other way can an adequate knowledge of the essential vocabulary be acquired. If the exercises here given be done faithfully, the pupil will find on passing to Nepos or Caesar that he is acquainted with all the common words in the senses in which they are used by these authors, and will escape the discouragement incident to the acquisition of a new vocabulary.

Some may miss lists of related words such as are given in many books. Experience, however, shows that such lists have little value compared with those made by the

pupil himself in his note-book. The making of such lists should be steadily encouraged and the lists frequently reviewed. In the vocabularies allied words are regularly given to assist the pupil's memory.

The method of presentation, so far as possible, is the natural one. Sentences are used from the beginning; the unnatural order at first, all inflections with little syntax, then syntax, has been avoided; but the simplest and most familiar constructions of the noun and verb are employed early in connection with the fundamental inflections. The demonstrative pronouns are introduced in Lesson XII; and the simple independent uses of the subjunctive are begun in Lesson XXIX, followed by those dependent constructions which naturally belong with the independent. The introduction of Indirect Discourse in connection with the Subject and Object Infinitive will, it is hoped, free the learner from one of the time-honored terrors of Latin. Throughout, inflections and syntax are gradually developed and fully illustrated. In the treatment of the latter, recourse has constantly been made to points of similarity in Latin and English, and constructions familiar to the learner from his daily speech, as, for example, appositives, predicate nouns and adjectives, subject and object infinitives, have been freely used before they receive formal treatment. As a result of this, the rule is simply the codification of the learner's knowledge rather than the presentation of a new principle. As some teachers prefer to use a grammar with the first book, references have been given under each rule to the Latin grammar of West (W.), Bennett (B.), Allen and Greenough (A.G.), and Harkness (H.).

The author hopes that this book will prove interesting as well as useful. To secure this end the subject-matter of the exercises has been considered with care, and in most lessons the sentences taken together tell some

story rather than remain isolated illustrations of inflections and syntax. Passages of connected Latin, fables and stories from Greek and Roman history, are early introduced and used with increasing frequency to the end. These have been drawn and adapted from Livy, Eutropius, Florus, Viri Romae, etc. At the end Caesar's account of his first invasion of Britain is given as possessing unique interest for English-speaking pupils.

Yet while every effort has been made to give the necessary elementary knowledge in a simple and interesting manner, care has been taken not to avoid or to slur over the real difficulties of beginning Latin. The author has no sympathy with the notion, now fortunately disappearing, that a study must be made easy to escape being dull. A knowledge of Latin, like that of every other subject, can only be acquired by hard work; and the author's own experience in teaching the elements of Latin has convinced him that nothing contributes so certainly to an interest in the subject as hard study and the mastery of each principle as it is met. Real acquisition is a delight, and nothing has done so much to create a distaste for Latin or caused so many to drop the language at the end of the first year as careless work in the beginning and the useless half-knowledge resulting therefrom. Inflections and rules should be *learned*, and the exercises should be mastered. If this be done throughout the study of this book, the pupil will find a genuine interest in Nepos and Caesar.

Finally, no attempt has here been made to supplant the intelligent teacher. The printed word can never be so potent as the living voice, and each topic can be advantageously illustrated by the instructor.

The author wishes to thank Prof. A. F. West for permission to make free use of the excellent statements employed in his Latin Grammar in the TWENTIETH CENTURY SERIES; to express his obligation for invaluable aid

of every kind to Dr. J. W. H. Walden, of Cambridge; to Dr. J. W. Hewitt, Master in Worcester Academy, and to Mr. Peterssen of the Harvard Graduate School for their kind assistance in proof-reading; and especially to Prof. Charles H. Forbes, of Phillips Academy, Andover, for his help at many points where his large experience has been of great service.

All suggestions and corrections will be gratefully received.

C. H. M.

CAMBRIDGE, MASS., *August 15, 1903.*

CONTENTS

LESSON	PAGES
INTRODUCTION	1-6
I. FIRST DECLENSION. — Nominative and Accusative Singular and Plural. Subject. Object . . .	7-9
II. FIRST DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Possessive Genitive. Dative of the Indirect Object	9-12
III. FIRST DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Predicate Nominative. Dative of Possessor	12-14
IV. SECOND DECLENSION.—Appositives. Ablative of Place.	14-17
V. SECOND DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions. Agreement of Ad- jectives. Predicate of Adjectives	17-20
VI. SECOND DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Ablative of Accom- paniment	21-23
VII. THE VERB sum . Present system in the Indicative and Infinitive. Agreement of Verbs. Adjectives in -er	24-26
VIII. FIRST CONJUGATION.—Active Voice: Present System in the Indicative and Infinitive	27-29
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Retort Truthful</i>	29-30
IX. FIRST CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>).—Passive Voice: Pres- ent System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ab- lative of Agent	30-32
X. THE VERB sum . Perfect System in the Indicative and Infinitive. Ablative of Means or Instrument .	33-35
XI. FIRST CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>).—Perfect System of amō in the Indicative and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Ablative of Cause	36-39
XII. THE DEMONSTRATIVES hīc AND ille	39-42
XIII. THE RELATIVE quī . Agreement of the Relative Pro- noun	43-45
XIV. THE DEMONSTRATIVE is : THE INTERROGATIVE quis .	46-49

LESSON	PAGES
XV. THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems . . .	49-52
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Early Kings of Rome</i> . . .	52
XVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION.—Mute Stems (<i>continued</i>). —Ablative of Manner	53-56
XVII. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems. Objective Genitive . . .	56-60
XVIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Stems in -i . . .	60-64
XIX. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Mixed Stems	64-67
XX. THE THIRD DECLENSION (<i>continued</i>).—Rules for Gender. Accusative and Ablative of Time . . .	67-70
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of the Republic</i>	70-71
XXI. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION . . .	71-74
XXII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—Declension of Comparatives. Ablative of Comparison . . .	74-77
XXIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>).—Adjectives in -er and -ilis. Ablative of Degree of Difference.	78-80
XXIV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (<i>continued</i>).—Irregular Comparison. Ablative of Separation . . .	81-84
XXV. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . .	84-87
READING EXERCISE: <i>Wars with the Gauls</i> . . .	87-88
XXVI. FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS	89-92
XXVII. SECOND CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire and the Present Infinitive of habeō , active and passive	92-94
XXVIII. THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE OF QUALITY . . .	95-97
XXIX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Present System of the Subjunctive of sum , amō , and habeō . Volitive Subjunctive. Optative Subjunctive	97-101
XXX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES.—Purpose and Result Clauses	101-104
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Persian Wars</i>	105
XXXI. THIRD CONJUGATION. Present System of regō in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive, Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Purpose	106-109
XXXII. THIRD CONJUGATION (<i>continued</i>).—Perfect System of regō in the Indicative, Active and Passive . . .	109-111

LESSON	PAGES
XXXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō).—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of capiō , Active and Passive. Substantive Clauses of Result. Clauses introduced by quīn	111-115
XXXIV. FOURTH CONJUGATION.—The Indicative entire, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and Present Infinitive of audiō , Active and Passive	115-117
XXXV. REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.—Relative Clauses of Purpose and of Characteristic	117-121
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Marathon</i>	121-122
XXXVI. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.—Substantive Clauses with Verbs of Fearing	122-124
XXXVII. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — Semi-Deponent Verbs. Ablative with Deponents	125-127
XXXVIII. THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE	128-130
XXXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	131-134
XL. PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS	134-137
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis</i>	137-139
XLI. THE INFINITIVE.—Subject and Object Infinitives. Indirect Discourse	139-143
XLII. INDIRECT DISCOURSE (<i>continued</i>).—Indirect Questions. Conditions in Indirect Discourse	143-146
READING EXERCISE: <i>Roman History from 60 B. C.</i>	147-148
XLIII. THE COMPOUNDS OF sum .—Dative with Compounds	148-150
XLIV. Volō, nōlō, mālō	150-152
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Beginning of Civil War</i>	153-154
XLV. COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS	154-156
XLVI. Eō AND fīō	157-158
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Civil Wars (continued)</i>	159-160
XLVII. TEMPORAL CLAUSES.—Clauses introduced by antequam and priusquam ; by dum	160-164

LESSON	PAGES
XLVIII. CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY cum	164-167
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Assassination of Caesar</i>	167-168
XLIX. CAUSE AND CONCESSION	169-171
L. PARTICIPLES.—Ablative Absolute	172-175
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Destruction of the Conspirators</i>	176-177
LI. THE VERB ferō	177-179
LII. REVIEW OF PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.	179-181
READING EXERCISE: <i>The Battle of Actium and the End of the Civil Wars</i>	181-183
LIII. REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE	183-187
LIV. REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE	187-191
READING EXERCISE: <i>Octavian's Triumph and Rule</i>	191-193
LV. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS	193-195
LVI. GERUND AND SUPINE	196-199
LVII. NUMERALS	199-200
CAESAR'S FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN	201-215
APPENDIX.—Declensions and Conjugations	217-258
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	259-285
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	286-298

FIRST LATIN BOOK

INTRODUCTION

THE LATIN LANGUAGE

1 THE Latin language is so named because it was first spoken by the ancient Latin tribe which inhabited the neighborhood of Rome. It gradually spread until it became the principal language of the Roman Empire, which once covered the whole western civilized world. It lasted as the common spoken language well into the Middle Ages, and as the universal language of scholars until about the middle of the eighteenth century. Some books are still written in Latin, and some scholars speak it. It is also used in our time as the language of the Roman Catholic Church.

2 Latin is the parent of those modern languages which are known as Romance languages—such as French, Italian, and Spanish. About one-half of all our English words are borrowed from foreign languages, and four-fifths of these borrowed words come either directly or indirectly from Latin.

Alphabet

3 The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no j or w.

- 4 **U** as the vowel form of **V** was not invented until the Middle Ages, but for convenience both forms are generally used. **K** is found only in **Kalendae**, *Calends, the first of the month*, and a very few other words. **Q** is always followed by **u** as in English. **Y** and **Z** were introduced about 50 B. C. to represent the sounds of the corresponding Greek letters, and are found only in foreign words.
- 5 The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**. The diphthongs are **ae, oe, au, eu, ei, ui**.
- 6 The consonants are all other letters. They are divided into

Mutes (stopped sounds) **p, b, t, d, c, k, q, g**.

Liquids . . . **l, m, n, r**.

Sibilant . . . **s**.

Double consonants . **x = cs** or **gs, z = ds**.

Pronunciation

7

VOWELS

The mark - over a vowel means that it is *long*, and ˘ that it is *short*.

ā as the last *a* of *aha*'.

ē as in *whey*.

ī as in *pique*.

ō as in *omen*.

ū as *oo* in *pool*.

ȳ ȳ like the German *ü* or the French *u*.

ǣ as the first *a* of *aha*!

ě as in *whet*.

ĩ as in *pick*.

õ as in *omit*.

ũ as in *put*.

8

DIPHTHONGS

ae as *ai* in *aisle*.

oe as *oi* in *oil*.

au as *ow* in *owl*.

eu as *eu* in *feud*.

ei as *ei* in *feint*.

ui as *we*.

- 9 The sounds of **ei**, **ui**, **eu**, will be more accurately reproduced if the English words are somewhat drawled, so that the component vowels may be heard more distinctly, e. g., *fee-int*.

10 CONSONANTS

Consonants are sounded as in English, except that

c and **g** are always hard, as in *cat*, *get*.

i consonant is always like *y* in *yet*.

s is always sharp, as in *sun*, *sea*.

t is always sounded as in *time*.

v is always like *w* in *wine*.

x is like *ks*.

z is like *dz* in *adze*.

bs is like *ps*.

bt is like *pt*.

ch is like *k*.

Doubled consonants, like **ll**, **nn**, **tt**, must be sounded separately: **il-le**, **án-nus**, **mít-tō**. Compare the English *book-case*, *rat-trap*.

Syllables

- 11 A Latin word has as many syllables as it contains separate vowels and diphthongs: **au-rum**, *gold*; **a-mā-vit**, *he loved*; **for-ti-tū-dō**, *bravery*.

- 12 In dividing words into syllables:

(a) A single consonant is attached to the following vowel: **lē-gā-tus**, *ambassador*.

(b) When two or more consonants stand together, as many are usually attached to the following vowel as can begin a word: **for-tis**, *brave*; **prō-vín-ci-a**, *province*; **cō-gnō-scō**, *I recognize*.

(c) But compound words are divided into their component parts: **ád-sum**, *I am present*.

Quantity of Vowels

- 13 Vowels are either *long* (marked -) or *short* (marked ˘).

In this book all long vowels are marked ; all vowels not marked may be regarded as short.

- 14 A vowel is regularly short before a vowel or *h* : *mĕus*, *mine* ; *nĭhil*, *nothing*.

(a) A few exceptions occur, chiefly in proper names derived from the Greek : *Aenēas*.

- 15 It will be useful to remember that, with a few exceptions which will be marked, a vowel before *nt* or *nd* is short.

- 16 Diphthongs, vowels formed from diphthongs, and vowels due to contraction are long : *cāŭsa*, *reason* ; *inĭquus* (*in* + *āequus*), *unfair* ; *cōgō* (*cō* + *āgō*), *compel*.

Also a vowel before *i* consonant, *nf*, *ns*, and often before *gn*, is long : *ĕius*, *of him, his* ; *ĭnfāns*, *child* ; *mĕnsa*, *table* ; *rĕgnum*, *kingdom*.

Quantity of Syllables

- 17 A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong. It is also long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by a double consonant : *ex*, *from* ; *mors*, *death*.

It is important to remember that it is the *syllable*, not the vowel, which is long by position. Thus the last *syllable* of *ámant* is long by position, owing to the time required to pronounce the consonants *nt*, but the *vowel a* is short.

Accent

- 18 The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*, the next to the last the *penult*, and the syllable before the penult, the *antepenult*.
- 19 Words of two syllables are accented on the penult: *pá-ter*, *má-ter*.
- 20 Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long: *Rō-má-nus*. Otherwise they are accented on the antepenult: *tá-bu-la*, *table*; *ma-ri-ti-mus*, *maritime*.
- 21 A few monosyllables, called enclitics because they are closely joined to the preceding words, always throw an accent upon the syllable before them, even if that syllable be short. The most common enclitics are *-ne*, a sign of a question, and *-que*, and: *auditne*, *does he hear?* *rosáque*, *and a rose*.

22 Exercise for Pronunciation

In faucibus lupi os inhaeserat. Mercēde
 In the throat of a wolf a bone had stuck. For pay
 igitur condūcit gruem, quī illud extrahat. Hōc
 therefore he hired a crane who it was to take out. This
 grūs longitūdine collī facile effēcit. Cum
 the crane because of the length of his neck easily did. When,
 autem mercēdem postulāret, subridēns lupus et
 however, his pay he asked for, smiling the wolf and
 dentibus infrendēns, "Num tibi," inquit, "parva mercēs
 his teeth gnashing, "Does it to you," said he, "small pay
 vidētur, quod caput incolume ex lupi faucibus
 seem that your head unharmed from a wolf's throat
 extrāxistī?"
 you have got out?"

- 23 The Latin language has the same parts of speech as the English, and the same grammatical terms—*case, number, mood, tense, voice, declension*, etc.—are for the most part used in both English and Latin grammar.

Cases

- 24 The cases in Latin are the *nominative, vocative, genitive, dative, accusative, ablative*. These are partially distinguished by different forms, as will be explained later. There are also a few nouns which have a *locative* case, but this case had been nearly lost before the Romans developed a literature. The meanings of the cases will be shown in the following lessons.

Gender

- 25 There are three genders in Latin, as in English; but the gender of a Latin noun is more often determined by its ending than by its meaning. Special rules for gender will be given for each class of nouns; but the following general rules are useful:

(a) *Masculine* are names of males, also names of rivers, winds, and months: **pater**, *father*; **Caesar**, *Caesar*; **Rhēnus**, *Rhine*; **Eurus**, *east wind*; **Martius**, *March*.

(b) *Feminine* are names of females, also names of countries, islands, towns, and trees: **māter**, *mother*; **Tullia**, *Tullia*; **Eurōpa**, *Europe*; **Sicilia**, *Sicily*; **quercus**, *oak*.

LESSON I

FIRST OR -ā DECLENSION

26 Stem in ā¹

THE Gender is *Feminine*, except of nouns which denote males (25 a).

NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR AND PLURAL

27 EXAMPLES

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābula, story.} \\ \text{rosa, rose.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābulae, stories.} \\ \text{rosae, roses.} \end{array} \right.$
ACCUSATIVE	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābulam, story.} \\ \text{rosam, rose.} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fābulās, stories.} \\ \text{rosās, roses.} \end{array} \right.$

(a) Notice how the Latin plural is distinguished from the singular, and that, while in English the nominative and accusative (i. e. objective) have the same form, in Latin the endings differ.

Form the accusative singular, the nominative and accusative plural of **puella**, *girl*; **via**, *road*; **parva**, *small*; **māgna**, *large*.

¹ The Stem is the body of the word to which the endings are attached. The term is used here for convenience, but the changes of stems in forming the cases are too complicated for the beginner to attempt to understand.

28

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

ancilla, f. *maid-servant*.
fābula, f. *story, tale*.
Iūlia, f. *Julia*.
puella, f. *girl*.
rosa, f. *rose*.
Tullia, f. *Tullia*.
via, f. *road*.

PARTICLES

-ne, a sign of a question
 (21).
et, *and*.

ADJECTIVES

bona, f. *good*.
lāta, f. *wide, broad*.
longa, f. *long*.
māgna, f. *large*.
parva, f. *small, little*.

VERBS

est, (*he, she, it*) *is*.
sunt, (*they*) *are*.
amat, (*he, she, it*) *loves,*
likes.
amant, (*they*) *love, like*.

29

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Puella est parva. | <i>The girl is small.</i> |
| 2. Viae sunt longae. | <i>The roads are long.</i> |
| 3. Iūlia amat parvam puellam. | <i>Julia loves the little girl.</i> |
| 4. Amantne puellae rosās? | <i>Do the girls like roses?</i> |

(a) Notice that in Latin there is no article: we may translate **puella**, *girl, a girl, the girl*, as the situation requires. The fourth example above might have been translated, *Do girls like the roses?*

(b) Notice also that the adjectives agree with their nouns in *gender, number, and case*, as in English.

30 **Rule.**—The Subject of a finite¹ verb is in the Nominative.

31 **Rule.**—The Direct Object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative.

W. 289, 308; B. 166, 172; AG. 173, 237; H. 387, 404.

- 32** 1. Fābula est longa. 2. Lāta est via. 3. Longa via est lāta. 4. Iūlia est puella. 5. Parva puella est Tullia.

¹ That is, in any mood except the infinitive.

6. Iūlia amat māgnās rosās. 7. Amatne Iūlia longās fābulās? 8. Parvae puellae fābulās amant. 9. Iūlia est ancilla. 10. Estne¹ bona ancilla? 11. Tullia et Iūlia sunt bonae ancillae. 12. Ancillae parvam puellam amant.

- 33 1. The road is long. 2. The wide road is long. 3. Girls like roses. 4. Does Julia like roses? 5. Julia likes large roses. 6. Are Julia and Tullia little girls? 7. They are maid-servants. 8. Is the story good? 9. It is good and long.

LESSON II

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

34

PARADIGM

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC. ²	rosa, <i>a rose.</i>	rosae, <i>roses.</i>
GEN.	rosae, <i>of a rose.</i>	rosārum, <i>of roses.</i>
DAT.	rosae, <i>to a rose.</i>	rosīs, <i>to roses.</i>
ACCU.	rosam, <i>a rose.</i>	rosās, <i>roses.</i>
ABL.	rosā, <i>with</i> ³ <i>a rose.</i>	rosīs, <i>with roses.</i>

(a) The terminations, printed above in full-faced type, represent the case-endings combined with the stem; but in some forms no case-ending appears.

(b) Notice what cases are alike in the paradigm. Make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

¹ Notice that the number of the subject is shown by the verb-ending.

² The vocative is the case of address; in most nouns it is the same as the nominative.

³ This translation of the ablative is only one of a number possible; the various meanings will be given later.

POSSESSIVE GENITIVE

35

EXAMPLES

1. **Rosa puellae est alba.** *The girl's rose is white.*
2. **Ancilla Tulliae est bona.** *Tullia's maid is good.*

(a) Notice that the genitives **puellae** and **Tulliae** tell the persons who possess the rose and the maid-servant. Such a genitive is called a *Possessive Genitive*.

36

Rule.—The Genitive is used to denote the Possessor.

W. 353; B. 198; AG. 214, a. I; H. 440, 1.

DATIVE OF THE INDIRECT OBJECT

37

EXAMPLES

1. **Iūlia rosam ancillae dat.** *Julia gives the maid a rose.*
2. **Tullia fābulam puellis narrat.** *Tullia tells the girls a story.*

(a) Notice that the datives **ancillae** and **puellis** tell the persons to whom something is given or told. Such a dative, denoting the person toward whom the action of the verb is directed, is called the *Dative of the Indirect Object*. It may often be translated by the English Objective case with *to* or *for*.

38

Rule.—The Indirect Object of a verb is in the Dative case.

W. 326; B. 187; AG. 224; H. 424.

39

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

cūra, f. *care*.
epistula, f. *letter*.
filia,¹ f. *daughter*.
patria, f. *fatherland*.
rēgina, f. *queen*.
silva, f. *wood, forest*.

ADJECTIVES

cāra, f. *dear, beloved*.
mala, f. *bad, wicked*.
multa, f. *much, many*.
nova, f. *new*.
pulchra, f. *beautiful, pretty*.

¹ Dative and ablative plural **filiā-bus**.

sed, conj. *but*.nōn, adv. *not*.

VERBS

dat, (*he, she, it*) gives.narrant, (*they*) tell.dant, (*they*) give.habet, (*he, she, it*) has.narrat, (*he, she, it*) tells.habent, (*they*) have.

- 40 1. Tullia est rēgīnae filia. 2. Rēgīna novam fābulam filiae narrat. 3. Rēgīna habet pulchrās filiās. 4. Rēgīnae filiabus (dat.) pulchram fābulam narrat. 5. Parvae puellae (nom.) rosās multās rēgīnae dant. 6. Rēgīna amat patriam. 7. Patria rēgīnae (dat.) cāra est. 8. Rēgīna est bona et patriam amat. 9. Rēgīna filiae epistulam dat. 10. Suntne viae patriae longae? 11. Sunt longae sed nōn lātae. 12. Silva pulchra est lāta. 13. Rēgīnae bonae multam cūram habent. 14. Mala ancilla est māgna cūra.

- 41 Notice how the order of the preceding sentences differs from that in English. Latin being an inflected language, that is, having different forms to express the relation of words, admits of greater freedom in the arrangement of a sentence than ours. For example, if some one should say in English, *The queen the girl loves*, we should not know whether *queen* was subject or object; but in the Latin **Rēgīna puellam amat**, the case-endings make the construction clear. Study the following sentences:

1. **Rēgīna parvam puellam amat.** *The QUEEN (in contrast to the king, or any one else) loves the little girl.*

2. **Parvam puellam amat rēgīna.** *It is the LITTLE GIRL (not some one else) the queen loves.*

3. **Amatne rēgīna parvam puellam?** *Does the queen LOVE the little girl?*

The following general principles should be remembered:

(a) In a Latin sentence the subject, as the most important part, is ordinarily placed first; then the object

follows, as the next most important part; the indirect object, if any, follows; and the verb comes at the end, except such unimportant forms as *est*, *sunt*, and other parts of the Latin verb 'to be,' which may generally be placed in any convenient part of the sentence.

(b) Adjectives usually precede their nouns.

(c) If a word is to be made emphatic, it is ordinarily put first in the sentence.

- 42 With these principles in mind translate the following sentences, and see the varying meaning you can give by changing the position of the Latin words. Remember the Latin order is significant; it is never a matter of chance.

1. Tullia's letter is long. 2. The maid gives the letter to the queen. 3. The queen's daughter is not beautiful, but (she is)¹ dear. 4. The maid is telling Julia a new story. 5. Julia is a little girl, but she loves long stories. 6. Large forests are beautiful. 7. A good² queen loves her country, but a bad² queen does not.

LESSON III

FIRST DECLENSION (Continued)

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE

43

EXAMPLES

1. *Alexandra est rēgina.* *Alexandra is the queen.*
2. *Tullia et Iūlia sunt par-vae puellae.* *Tullia and Julia are little girls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the nominatives *rēgina*, *puellae*, are in the predicates, and mean the same

¹ Omit.

² Express emphasis by the order.

as the subjects **Alexandra** and **Tullia et Iūlia**. Such nouns as **rēgina** and **puella** are called *Predicate Nouns*.

(b) Notice that nouns were used in this way in sentences 4, 5, 9, 10, and 11 of Lesson I, and sentences 1 and 14 of Lesson II.

- 44** *Rule.*—A Predicate noun agrees with its subject in case.
W. 290; B. 168; AG. 185; H. 393.

DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

45 EXAMPLES

1. **Bona ancilla est Iūliae** (dative). *Julia has a good maid.*
2. **Rosae sunt puellis** (dative). *The girls have roses.*

(a) Notice that the datives **Iūliae** and **puellis** are used in the predicate with **est** and **sunt** to tell the persons to whom **ancilla** and **rosae** belong, and that the meaning is the same as **Iūlia bonam ancillam habet, Puellae rosas habent**. Such a dative is called the *Dative of Possessor*. The thing possessed is the subject of the verb.

- 46** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with *est*, and other forms of the Latin verb meaning “to be,” to denote the Possessor.
W. 340; B. 190; AG. 231; H. 430.

47 VOCABULARY

NOUNS

āra , f. <i>altar</i> .	Graecia , f. <i>Greece</i> .
Britannia , f. <i>Britain, England</i> .	Ītalia , f. <i>Italy</i> .
dea , ¹ f. <i>goddess</i> .	nauta , m. <i>sailor</i> .
fāma , f. <i>fame, reputation</i> .	poēta , m. <i>poet</i> .
	vīta , f. <i>life</i> .

ADJECTIVES

clāra , f. <i>renowned, famous</i> .	mea , f. <i>my</i> .
grāta , f. <i>pleasing, acceptable</i> .	tua , f. <i>your</i> (singular).

¹ **Dea** forms the dative and ablative plural like **filia** (39).

VERBS

laudat, (*he, etc.*) *praises.*habitat, (*he, etc.*) *lives, dwells.*laudant, (*they*) *praise.*habitant, (*they*) *live, dwell.*

ADVERBS

ibi, *there.*ubi, *where* (relative and interrogative).

- 48 1. Graecia est mea patria, Italia est patria Tulliae.
 2. Deae habent multas aras. 3. Deabus sunt multae aerae.
 4. Ubi¹ sunt aerae dearum? 5. Laudatne poeta deam?
 6. Poeta, magna est tua fama. 7. Longa vita non est
 nautae. 8. Vita reginae est longa. 9. Regina multas
 filias habet. 10. Reginae (dat.) sunt multae filiae. 11.
 Fama est poetae grata. 12. Clara est poetae fama. 13.
 Italia est patria nautae, sed ibi non habitat.

- 49 1. The poet loves great fame. 2. Altars are accept-
 able to the goddesses. 3. England is the sailor's native
 land and he lives there. 4. Poets love and praise their
 native land. 5. The queen has a beautiful daughter.²
 6. Do the broad forests belong to the queen?² 7. My
 daughter, your letter is not long.

LESSON IV

SECOND OR -o DECLENSION

Stem in o

- 50 THE Gender of nouns of the Second Declension
 ending in -us in the nominative is usually *Mas-*
culine.

¹ As **ubi** is itself an interrogative particle, **-ne** is not needed.

² In how many ways can this be translated?

51

PARADIGM

Servus, slave.**servo-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., VOC.	servus, serve	servī
GEN.	servī	servōrum
DAT.	servō	servīs
ACCU.	servum	servōs
ABL.	servō	servīs

(a) The vocative singular of such nouns ends in **-e**. In all other nouns and in all plurals it is the same as the nominative.

(b) Notice what cases have the same terminations; make a table of the terminations and commit it to memory.

(c) All the feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have corresponding masculine forms in **-us** declined like **servus**: **bonus, cārus, clārus, longus, māgnus, parvus**, etc.

(d) Decline together, **bonus amīcus, lātus campus**.

APPOSITIVES

52

EXAMPLES

1. **Dea Vesta āram habet.** *The goddess, Vesta, has an altar.*
2. **Iūliae puellae rosam** *The maid gives a rose to the*
dat ancilla. *girl Julia.*

(a) Notice that **Vesta** is in the same case as **dea**, and explains what goddess is meant; that **Iūliae** bears the same relation to **puellae**. Such a noun explaining another noun referring to the same person or thing is called an *Appositive*, as in English.

- 53 **Rule.**—An Appositive agrees with its subject in case.
W. 291; B. 169, 2; AG. 184; H. 393.

Decline together **dea Vesta, Marcus dominus**.

ABLATIVE OF PLACE

54

EXAMPLES

1. **Amicus est in hortō.** *A friend is in the garden.*
2. **Dea āram in campō habet.** *The goddess has an altar in the plain.*

(a) Notice that **in hortō**, **in campō** answer the question *Where?* Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of the Place Where*.

- 55 **Rule.**—The Place Where is expressed by the Ablative with a preposition.

W. 401; B. 228; AG. 258, c; H. 483.

56

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

- | | |
|--|--|
| agricola , -ae, m. <i>farmer</i> . | servus , -ī, m. <i>slave</i> . |
| amicus , -ī, m. <i>friend</i> . | terra , -ae, f. <i>land, earth, ground</i> . |
| campus , -ī, m. <i>plain, field</i> . | Vesta , -ae, f. <i>Vesta (a goddess)</i> . |
| dominus , -ī, m. <i>master, owner</i> . | vilicus , ī, m. <i>steward, superintendent of an estate</i> . |
| hortus , -ī, m. <i>garden</i> . | villa , -ae, f. <i>country house, farm</i> . |
| Marcus , -ī, m. <i>Marcus</i> . | |
| ōceanus , -ī, m. <i>ocean</i> . | |
| Quintus , -ī, m. <i>Quintus</i> . | |

VERBS

- | | |
|--|--|
| cūrat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>cares for, takes care of</i> . | errant , (<i>they</i>) <i>wander, stray about</i> . |
| cūrant , (<i>they</i>) <i>care for, take care of</i> . | labōrat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>works</i> . |
| errat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>wanders, strays about</i> . | labōrant , (<i>they</i>) <i>work</i> . |
| | nāvigat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>sails</i> . |
| | nāvigant , (<i>they</i>) <i>sail</i> . |

in, preposition with abl., *in*. **itaque**, conj., *therefore*.

- 57 1. **Āra deae Vestae est in silvā.** 2. **Deae grāta est rosa.** 3. **Itaque Marcus multās rosās deae dat.** 4. **Marcus est agricola et amicus Quīntī.** 5. **Quīntō sunt lātī campī**

et māgnus hortus. 6. Habet villam et multōs servōs. 7. Servi labōrant in campīs dominī. 8. Quīntus in terrā nōn habitat, sed ōceanum nāvigat. 9. Marcus est Quīntī vilicus. 10. Itaque Marcus hortum et villam mei amīcī Quīntī cūrat. 11. Amīce Quīnte, Marcus est bonus vilicus. 12. Iūlia et Tullia, filiae dominī, ibi errant, ubi sunt multae et pulchrae rosae.

- 58 1. The steward's reputation is good. 2. Marcus, the owner of the country house, has a new steward.¹ 3. Where are the new slaves working? 4. They are working in your garden, but the maids are working in my country house. 5. The ocean is dear to the sailor, but the farmer praises the land. 6. Julia, where are your beautiful roses? 7. My roses are on (in) the altar of the goddess. 8. Poets praise the famous forests of Italy, where the goddess has many altars.¹

LESSON V

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS

- 59 THE Gender of all nouns of the Second Declension ending in *-um* is *Neuter*.

- 60 PARADIGM

Dōnum, gift.

dono-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	dōnō	dōnīs
ACCU.	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	dōnō	dōnīs

¹ Translate the sentence in two ways.

(a) Notice that the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative have the same form. This is true of all neuters.

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

61 The masculine and feminine adjectives given in the preceding vocabularies have neuter forms in *-um*: *bonum*, *cārum*, *clārum*, *longum*, *māgnum*, *parvum*, etc. These are declined like *dōnum*.

The full declension of these adjectives is shown thus :

62

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	<i>bonus</i> , <i>bone</i>	<i>bona</i>	<i>bonum</i>
GEN.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
DAT.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
ACCU.	<i>bonum</i>	<i>bonam</i>	<i>bonum</i>
ABL.	<i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i>

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	<i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bona</i>
GEN.	<i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
ACCU.	<i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bona</i>
ABL.	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.—PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

63

EXAMPLES

1. *Amicus est bonus.*
2. *Puella est pulchra.*
3. *Dōnum est grātum.*
4. *Amicī sunt bonī.*
5. *Puellae sunt pulchrae.*
6. *Dōna sunt grāta.*
7. *Rēgīna māgnam cūram habet.*
8. *Poēta pulchrōs hortōs laudat.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences and in those of all the preceding lessons the adjectives have the same *Gen-*

der, *Number*, and *Case* as the nouns they modify; also that in the first six sentences the adjectives are in the predicate. Compare these with predicate nouns (43).

- 64 **Rule.**—An Adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.

W. 293; B. 234; AG. 186; H. 394.

- 65 In the sentences used thus far the adjectives have the same terminations as the nouns they modify; but this is not always so—e. g., we must say, *bonus agricola*, *bonī agricolae*, etc., since *agricola* is masculine.

Decline *clārus poēta*.

66

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

<i>argentum</i> , -ī, n. <i>silver</i> , <i>money</i> .	<i>Horātius</i> , ¹ -ī, m. <i>Horace</i> .
<i>dōnum</i> , -ī, n. <i>gift</i> .	<i>lupus</i> , -ī, m. <i>wolf</i> .
<i>filius</i> , ¹ -ī, m. <i>son</i> .	<i>Mūsa</i> , -ae, f. <i>Muse</i> .
<i>gladius</i> , ¹ -ī, m. <i>sword</i> .	<i>periculum</i> , -ī, n. <i>danger</i> .
<i>grātia</i> , -ae, f. <i>gratitude</i> , <i>favor</i> (<i>grātus</i> , -a, -um).	<i>populus</i> , -ī, m. <i>people</i> .
	<i>scūtum</i> , -ī, n. <i>shield</i> .
<i>Rōmānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	<i>quoque</i> , adv., <i>also</i> , <i>too</i> .

VERBS

<i>erat</i> , (<i>he</i> , etc.) <i>was</i> .	<i>errābat</i> , ² (<i>he</i> , etc.) <i>was wan-</i>
<i>erant</i> , (<i>they</i>) <i>were</i> .	<i>dering</i> , <i>wandered</i> .

¹ The Genitive singular of all nouns in -*ius* ends in single -ī; the accent is always on the penult: *fīlī*, *Horātī*.

The Vocative singular of *fīlius* and all proper names in -*ius* also ends in -ī: *fīlī*, *Horātī*.

² Notice how the form of this tense is related to the present *errat*. *Errābat* is called the Imperfect tense and is equivalent to the English Progressive Preterite or to the simple Preterite. Form the Imperfects of *fugat*, *laudat*, *narrat*, and *servat*. The imperfect of *dat* is *dābat*, *dābant*.

errābant , (<i>they</i>) <i>were wandering, wandered.</i>	habitābat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>was living, lived, dwelt.</i>
fugat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>puts to flight.</i>	habitābant , (<i>they</i>) <i>were living, lived, dwelt.</i>
fugant , (<i>they</i>) <i>put to flight.</i>	servat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>saves, protects.</i>
habēbat , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>was having, had.</i>	servant , (<i>they</i>) <i>save, protect.</i>
habēbant , (<i>they</i>) <i>were having, had.</i>	

- 67 1. Horātius erat clārus poēta. 2. In Ītaliā habitābat et populō Rōmānō cārus erat. 3. Fīlius vilicī erat et villam parvam, dōnum amīcī, habēbat. 4. Ibi habitābat et villam amābat. 5. Nōn multum argentum sed multōs amīcōs habēbat. 6. Horātius parvus filius vilicī in silvā errābat. 7. Ibi lupus quoque errābat. 8. Gladius et scūtum nōn erant Horātiō. 9. Itaque māgnō in¹ periculō erat Horātius, sed Mūsae poētam servābant. 10. Horātius lupum fugābat et Mūsīs grātiā habēbat.

- 68 1. Where did the famous poet Horace live? 2. Italy was the native land of the poet Horace. 3. The poet's life was not long, but it was dear to the Muses. 4. The Muses saved Horace's life; therefore he felt grateful² to the goddesses and gave (them)³ many gifts. 5. Horace put a wolf to flight in the forest. 6. Horace's friend gave (him)³ a beautiful country house. 7. Horace did not have great gardens and many slaves. 8. But the gifts of his friend were acceptable to the poet.

¹ A monosyllabic preposition frequently stands between an adjective and its noun.

² Compare sentence 10 above.

³ Omit.

LESSON VI

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

Nouns in -er and -ir

69

PARADIGMS

Puer, *boy*.**puero-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	puer	puerī
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs
ACCU.	puerum	puerōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs

Ager, *field*.**agro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	ager	agrī
GEN.	agrī	agrōrum
DAT.	agrō	agrīs
ACCU.	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	agrō	agrīs

Vir, *man*.**viro-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACCU.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

(a) Notice that with the exception of the nominative and vocative singular these nouns are declined like **ser-vus**; also that the only difference between the declension

of *puer* and *ager* is that *puer* keeps the *e* of the nominative throughout, while *ager* drops it. Most nouns in *-er* of the Second Declension are declined like *ager*.

ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

70

EXAMPLES

1. *Poëta cum filiō errat.* *The poet is walking with (his) son.*
2. *Quīntus cum vilicō habitābat.* *Quintus lived with (his) steward.*
3. *Rēgīna cum filiābus in hortō erat.* *The queen was in the garden with (her) daughters.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablative with *cum* is used to denote the person who accompanies the subject. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Accompaniment*.

- 71 *Rule.*—Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *cum*.

W. 392; B. 222; AG. 248 a; H. 473, 1.

72

VOCABULARY

NOUNS

<i>ager, agrī, m. field.</i>	<i>magister, magistri, m. school-</i>
<i>bellum, -ī, n. war.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
<i>Britannī, -ōrum, m. Britons,</i>	<i>oppidum, -ī, n. town.</i>
<i>inhabitants of Britain.</i>	<i>praemium,² -ī, n. reward.</i>
<i>liber, librī, m. book.</i>	<i>Rōma, -ae, f. Rome.</i>
<i>liberī,¹ -ōrum, m. children</i>	<i>vir, virī, m. man.</i>
<i>(free-born).</i>	

ADJECTIVES

<i>antiquus, -a, -um, ancient,</i>	<i>validus, -a, -um, strong, sturdy.</i>
<i>old.</i>	

¹ Not used in the singular.

² The genitive singular of neuter nouns in *-ium* ends in single *-ī*; *praemium, praemī* (66, 1).

VERBS

erit , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>will be.</i>	dabunt , (<i>they</i>) <i>will give.</i>
erunt , (<i>they</i>) <i>will be.</i>	habēbit , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>will have.</i>
amābit , ¹ (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>will love.</i>	habēbunt , (<i>they</i>) <i>will have.</i>
amābunt , (<i>they</i>) <i>will love.</i>	servābit , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>will save.</i>
dabit , (<i>he, etc.</i>) <i>will give.</i>	servābunt , (<i>they</i>) <i>will save.</i>
cum , prep. with abl. <i>with.</i>	semper , <i>always.</i>

- 73** 1. Vilicus cum servis est in agris. 2. Servi Marci agricolae in hortō labōrant. 3. Bonis servis dominus praemium dabit. 4. In Britannia sunt antiquae viae Rōmānae. 5. Multi liberī sunt Marcō agricolae, pulchra filia et validi filiī. 6. Liberī poētae habēbunt bonum magistrum. 7. Iulia, poētae filia, librōs magistrī cūrat. 8. Puerī cum amīcis in lātā silvā semper errant. 9. Erunt validi virī, gladium et scūtum habēbunt et bella amābunt. 10. Nauta cum liberis ōceanum nāvigat. 11. Māgnō in periculō erunt liberī, sed nauta liberōs servābit.

- 74** 1. Marcus's sons live in the town with their teacher. 2. The children will not have much money, but they will have many good books. 3. The teacher wanders in the ancient woods and fields with the children. 4. He tells the boys and girls many good stories. 5. The teacher will give the boys books, not money, as a reward. 6. The children will love the books of the poet Horace, the gift of (their)² teacher. 7. The books of the poet Horace will always be famous. 8. A great reputation will be the reward of a good poet.

¹ Notice how these Futures are related to the present and imperfect (66) forms of the same verbs. Form Futures, singular and plural, of **fugat**, **laudat**, **narrat**, and write sentences containing these forms.

² Omit.

LESSON VII

THE VERB SUM, to be

- 75 LEARN the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive of **sum** (485).

(a) Notice that the endings of the verb learned indicate the *person* and *number*, as the endings of nouns indicate the *case* and *number*. Thus far only the third person has been employed: **est, erat, erit** in the singular; **sunt, erant, erunt** in the plural. The subjects of the first and second persons are expressed only for emphasis.

- 76 **Rule.**—A finite verb agrees with its subject in **Number** and **Person**.

W. 296; B. 254, 1; AG. 204; H. 388.

- 77 1. Sum, eram, erō. 2. Es, erās, eris. 3. Estis, erātis, eritis. 4. Sumus, erāmus, erimus. 5. Erat, esse, erit. 6. Estis, eritis, erunt.

- 78 1. You (sing.) are, you (sing.) were. 2. You (plu.) will be, you were. 3. I was, you shall be, they are. 4. They are, they were, they shall be.

79 Adjectives in -er

PARADIGMS

Niger, nigra, nigrum, black.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACCU.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

Miser, misera, miserum, *wretched.*

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserae	miserō
ACCU.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	misera	miserō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACCU.	miserōs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(a) Notice that these adjectives in -er have the same peculiarities of declension as nouns in -er; the feminine nominative shows whether the adjective follows **ager** or **puer**.

80

VOCABULARY

aeger, -gra, -grum, *feeble,* **niger, -gra, -grum, *black.***
sick. **pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beau-***
cēterī, -ae, -a,¹ *the rest of.* *tiful.*
liber, -era, -erum, *free.* **sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred.***
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched,* **tener, -era, -erum, *delicate,***
unhappy. *soft, tender.*

¹ Usually plural; the masculine and neuter are frequently used as substantives.

auxilium -ī, n. *aid, assistance, help.*
equus -ī, m. *horse.*
herba -ae, f. *grass.*

dare, *to give.* **liberāre**, *to set free.*
vocāre, *to call.*

- 81** 1. Equi nigri in lātis agris errābant. 2. Herba tenera aegrīs equīs grāta erit. 3. Servus erat cum equīs in campīs et equōs dominī cūrābat. 4. Quīntus, magister filiōrum Marcī, est servus. 5. Marcus dominus argentum servō non dabit sed filiōs Quīntī liberābit. 6. Liberatne dominus cēterōs filiōs servī? grātiā habēbunt.¹ 7. Itaque, puerī, liberī eritis et in agrīs nōn labōrābitis. 8. In villā Horātī poētae erat antiqua āra, Mūsīs sacra. 9. Horātius puer Mūsās vocābat. 10. “Mūsae, in periculō sum.” Bonae erant miserō puerō et auxilium dabant. 11. Poēta amīcus Mūsārum est; in periculō Mūsās vocābit. 12. Poētam miserum semper servābunt deae. 13. Auxilium miseris virīs dare Mūsīs est grātum.²
- 82** 1. Julia, the poet's daughter, was sick, but not unhappy. 2. She had many beautiful books, the gift of her teacher. 3. The rest of the poet's children are strong and will be handsome men. 4. Greece is an ancient land, sacred to the Muses. 5. All other lands are beautiful, but they are not dear to poets. 6. The master will set the unhappy slaves free and give the boy a reward. 7. Boys gave tender grass to the sick horse. 8. To give aid to an unhappy man is good.³

¹ Compare 67, 10.

² Notice that the subject of **est** is the entire infinitive clause **auxilium . . . dare**, and that the neuter predicate adjective **grātum** modifies it. All clauses used as substantives are neuter.

³ Compare sentence 13 above.

LESSON VIII

FIRST OR *ā* CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE; PRESENT SYSTEM

- 83 THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Perfect Participle. When these are known all other forms can easily be determined. Thus the Principal Parts of *amō* are :

amō, *I love.* *amāre*, *to love.* *amāvī*, *I have loved, I loved.*
amātus, *having been loved.*

- 84 Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive active of *amō* (479).

(a) Notice that all these forms, with the apparent exception of the first person singular of the present indicative, are formed from the stem *amā-*, which may be obtained by dropping *-re* of the present infinitive. This form *amā-* is called the Present Stem, and the tenses formed from it belong to the Present System.¹

- 85 The Personal Endings express Person, Number, and Voice. They are given for the active voice in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-m, -ō	-mus
SECOND.	-s	-tis
THIRD.	-t	-nt

¹ The present and imperfect subjunctive, the present and future imperative, and the present participle, which also belong to the Present System, will be taken up later.

86 The Imperfect is formed by adding to the stem *amā-*, *-bā-*, sometimes called the Tense Sign of the imperfect, to which are added the personal endings. The Tense Sign of the Future for all verbs of the First and Second Conjugation is *-bī-*, which appears as *-bō* in the 1st pers. sing. and *-bu-* in the 3d pers. plural.

87 Inflect like *amō* the following :

<i>fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugā-</i>	<i>servō, servāre, servāvī, ser-</i>
<i>tus, to put to flight.</i>	<i>vātus, to save.</i>
<i>laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, lau-</i>	<i>vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocā-</i>
<i>dātus, to praise.</i>	<i>tus, to call.</i>

88 1. *Laudō, laudābās, laudābit.* 2. *Servābitis, servābā-*
mus, servat. 3. *Fugāmus, fugābāmus, fugābimus.* 4. *Vo-*
cat, vocāre, vocābat. 5. *Fugābis, laudābō, servābātis.*
 6. *Fugant, fugābant, fugābunt.*

89 1. He is calling, they will save. 2. I am praising, I
 was praising, I shall praise. 3. You are putting to flight,
 you were putting to flight, you will put to flight. 4. He
 calls, they called, you will call. 5. To save, you will save,
 you saved.

90 1. *Rōma erat antīquum oppidum in Ītaliā.* 2. *Ibi*
populus Rōmānus habitābat. 3. *Validī virī erant Rōmānī*
*et cum cēterīs populis Ītaliae bella agēbant.*¹ 4. *Populō*
Rōmānō erant lātī agrī. 5. *Multī equī in tenerā herbā*
agrōrum errābant. 6. *Rōmānī Rōmam, pulchrum oppi-*
dum, semper amābunt et laudābunt. 7. *Rōmulus erat*
clārus Rōmānus. 8. *Magister, liberīs pulchram fābulam*
*dē*² (*about*) *Rōmulō narrās.* 9. *Fābulās narrāre mihī (to*

¹ *Carried on.*

² A common preposition with the ablative.

me) grātum est: fābulam dē Rōmulō narrābō. 10. Lupa¹ (*she-wolf*) Rōmulum puerum cūrābat et vītā miserī puerī servābat. 11. Rōmulus cum lupā in silvā habitābat. 12. Puerī, amātisne fābulam dē Rōmulō?

- 91 1. Master,² you will call your slaves. 2. I call my slaves; you call yours. 3. Slaves, you will work in the fields diligently³ with your master. 4. You shall have a fine reward; you shall be free men. 5. He will set free the good slaves. 6. They did work diligently³ and their master set them free. 7. To a good farmer the earth will give many rewards. 8. He chased away the wolf and saved the children. 9. To save the poet was pleasing to the Muses.

92

READING EXERCISE

The Retort Truthful

Nāsica⁴ ad poētā Ennium vēnit (*came*) et quaesivit (*asked for*) poētā. Ancilla dixit (*said*), "Ennius nōn domī (*at home*) est;" sed Nāsica sēnsit (*perceived that*) ancillam⁵ dominī iūssū (*at the order*) dixisse (*had spoken*) et poētā⁵ intus (*within*) esse (*was*). Paucīs (*few*) post diēbus⁶ (*days*) ad Nāsicā vēnit Ennius et eum (*him*) quaesivit; sed exclāmat (*cried out*) Nāsica sē⁵ (*he*) domī nōn esse. Tum Ennius, "Quid? (*what?*) egō (*I*) nōn cōgnōscō (*recognize*) vōcem (*voice*) tuam?" Hīc (*at this*) Nāsica: Homō (*man*) es impudēs.⁷ Egō cum (*when*) tē (*you*) quaererem,⁸ ancillae⁹ tuae crēdidī (*I believed*) tē⁵

¹ Compare **lupus**, 66.² Not **magister**.³ **diligenter**.⁴ A distinguished Roman lawyer.⁵ Subject of the following infinitive.⁶ Abl. of time.⁷ Guess at the meaning. What English word is derived from it?⁸ First person singular, imp. subj. act. Compare **quaesivit**, the perf. indic. of the same verb. Translate as if indicative.⁹ Dative with the following verb.

domī nōn esse; tū (*you*) mihī¹ (*me*) nōn crēdis² ipsī³ (*myself*)?

LESSON IX

FIRST OR *ā* CONJUGATION (Continued)

PASSIVE VOICE

- 93 THE Principal Parts of a Latin verb in the Passive Voice are the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, and Perfect Participle. Thus the Principal Parts of **amō** in the passive are :

amor, *I am loved*. **amārī**, *to be loved*. **amātus**, *having been loved*.

- 94 Learn the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and the present infinitive passive of **amō** (479).

(a) Notice that all the forms learned are based on the present stem **amā-**, and that the imperfect and future indicative passive are formed with the same tense signs, **-bā-**, **-bi-** (**be**), as the corresponding tenses in the active.

- 95 The Personal Endings of the indicative passive are :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-r	-mur
SECOND.	-ris, -re	-mini
THIRD.	-tur	-ntur

- 96 Form the principal parts in the passive and inflect **fugō**, **laudō**, **servō**, **vocō**.
-

¹ Dative with the following verb.

² Present tense. What person and number?

³ Agreeing with **mihī**.

97 1. Amāre, amārī. 2. Amābam, amābar; vocābō, vocābor. 3. Laudātur, laudābātur, laudābitur. 4. Laudāminī, laudābiminī, laudābāminī. 5. Fugant, fugābuntur, fugāris. 6. Vocābis, vocāberis, vocābāre. 7. Amāre, laudārī, fugāre.

98 1. We are calling, you saved (plu.). 2. We shall be saved, they will save. 3. I did call, he is saving, he will save. 4. You will be saved, you are being saved. 5. To call, to be saved, to put to flight. 6. They were praising, they were being praised, they were praised. 7. We are being saved, you shall be saved.

ABLATIVE OF AGENT

EXAMPLES

- 99
- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. Quīntus amicum servat. | <i>Quintus saves his friend.</i> |
| 2. Amicus ā Quīntō servātur. | <i>The friend is saved by Quintus.</i> |
| 3. Dominus servum liberat. | <i>The master sets free the slave.</i> |
| 4. Servus ā dominō liberātur. | <i>The slave is set free by his master.</i> |

(a) Notice that when a statement is changed from the active form to the passive, the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, and that the subject of the active verb is shifted from the nominative to the ablative with the preposition *ā* (or *ab*¹). Such an ablative with *ā* or *ab* tells who the doer or agent of the action is, and is called *Ablative of Agent*.

- 100 **Rule.**—The Agent with Passive verbs is expressed by the Ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

W. 379; B. 216; AG. 246; H. 468.

¹ *Ā* or *ab* may be used before consonants, *ab* before vowels.

101

VOCABULARY

<i>incola</i> , -ae, m. <i>inhabitant</i> .	<i>oppidānus</i> , -a, -um, <i>belonging to a town (oppidum)</i> ; (frequently used as a substantive) <i>an inhabitant of a town</i> .
<i>lupa</i> , -ae, f. <i>she-wolf (lupus)</i> .	
<i>mūrus</i> , -ī, m. <i>wall (of a city)</i> .	
<i>praesidium</i> , -ī, n. <i>defense, protection</i> .	
<i>aedificō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to build</i> .	<i>cūrō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to care for</i> .
<i>appellō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to call, name</i> .	<i>pūgnō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>to fight</i> .
<i>ā</i> , ab, prep. with abl., <i>by</i> .	<i>dē</i> , prep. with abl., <i>about, concerning</i> .

102 1. Rōmulus Rōmam aedificābat. 2. Rōma ā Rōmulō, virō validō, aedificābātur. 3. Oppidum pulchrum ā Rōmulō Rōma appellābātur. 4. Rōma ab incolīs semper amābitur. 5. Clāra fābula dē Rōmulō liberīs ā magistrō narrābitur. 6. Vitam Rōmulī lupa servābat et puerum cūrābat. 7. Incolae oppidī oppidānī¹ appellantur. 8. Incolae antīquī Rōmae liberī virī erant et Rōmānī appellābantur. 9. Mūrus, praesidium oppidī, ab Rōmānīs aedificābātur. 10. In multīs bellīs cum cēterīs incolīs Ītalīae antīquī Rōmānī pūgnābant.

103 1. The poet Horace was saved by the Muses. 2. Romulus was saved and cared for by a she-wolf. 3. Ancient Rome was a strong town, and was built by Romulus. 4. Romulus was loved by the Roman people. 5. An altar sacred to Romulus was built by the Romans in the city. 6. The famous wall of Britain was not built by the ancient Britons, but by the Romans. 7. The horses are sick and are being cared for by their master. 8. To be cared for by their master is pleasant to the horses. 9. Tender grass is being given the handsome horses by the slaves.

¹ Predicate nominative.

LESSON X

PERFECT SYSTEM OF *SUM*

104 LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive of *sum* (485).

105 These tenses belong to the perfect system of *sum*, which is formed on the stem *fu-*, obtained by dropping *-ī* of the first person singular of the perfect indicative.

(a) Notice that the perfect system of this verb is formed on a different stem from the present system.

(b) Notice also that the personal endings of the pluperfect and future perfect are the same as those of the present system. The perfect indicative has certain endings peculiar to itself.

106 The Personal Endings of the Perfect Indicative Active are shown in the following table :

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
FIRST.	-ī	-imus
SECOND.	-istī	-istis
THIRD.	-it	-ērunt, -ēre

107 1. *Fuistī, fuerās, fueris.* 2. *Fuērunt, fuerant, fuerint.*
3. *Fuisse, fuēre, fuimus.* 4. *Fuī, fuerō, fuerātis.* 5. *Fuistis, fuerātis, fueritis.*

108 1. I have been, I shall have been. 2. I had been, they had been, they will have been. 3. He had been, he will have been, to have been. 4. We shall have been, we have been, we had been.

ABLATIVE OF MEANS OR INSTRUMENT

109

EXAMPLES

1. Virī gladiis armantur. *The men are being armed with swords.*
2. Nautae oceanum ventō nāvigant. *Sailors sail the sea by means of the wind.*
3. Lupum armīs fugābānt servi. *The slaves put the wolf to flight with weapons.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **gladiis**, **ventō**, **armīs** denote the *Means* or *Instrument* by which the action of the verb is performed; also that the Means or Instrument of the action goes along with, accompanies, the actor in the action, so that such an ablative, which is called the *Ablative of Means* or *Instrument*, is in reality similar to the Ablative of Accompaniment (71), used without the preposition. It is generally translated *with* or *by*.

- 110 **Rule.**—The Ablative is used to denote the Means or Instrument.

W. 386; B. 218; AG. 248, c; H. 476.

111

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| arma, -ōrum, n. plu. <i>arms, weapons.</i> | hasta, -ae, f. <i>spear.</i> |
| causa, -ae, f. <i>cause, reason.</i> | inimicus, -ī, m. <i>enemy (amicus, 56).</i> |
| deus, ¹ -ī, m. <i>god.</i> | proelium, -ī, n. <i>battle.</i> |
| Gallus, m. <i>a Gaul.</i> | templum, -ī, n. <i>temple.</i> |
| Gallia, f. <i>Gaul.</i> | victōria, -ae, f. <i>victory.</i> |
| dubius, -a, -um, <i>doubtful.</i> | proximus, -a, -um, <i>next, nearest.</i> |

¹ Vocative deus.

oppūgnō , -āre , ¹ <i>to storm, at-</i> <i>tack.</i>	ōlim , <i>once, once on a time,</i> <i>formerly.</i>
diū , <i>long, for a long time.</i>	sine , <i>prep. with abl., with-</i> <i>out.</i>
fortiter , <i>bravely.</i>	

- 112** 1. Terra proxima Ītalīae (dat.) Gallia appellābātur.
 2. Antīquī incolae Gallīae Rōmānōs nōn amābant. 3. In-
 imīcī populī Rōmānī semper fuerant. 4. Incolae Gallīae
 Gallī ōlim appellābantur. 5. Multae causae bellī cum
 Rōmānīs fuerant Gallīs. 6. Gallīs ōlim erant multa pul-
 chra oppida. 7. Multa oppida Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs op-
 pūgnābantur. 8. Oppidānī armīs diū et fortiter pūgnā-
 bant. 9. Sed Gallī validōs mūrōs nōn habēbant; itaque
 oppidānī miserī sine praesidiō fuērunt. 10. Gladiīs et
 hastīs pūgnābant et in templīs deōs vocābant, nam (for)
 victōria diū fuerat dubia.

- 113** 1. The Romans stormed a town of the Gauls without
 reason. 2. Did the Gauls have a good reason for war²
 with the Romans? 3. The Gauls and the Romans had
 been enemies for a long time. 4. The Romans did not
 have the protection of a wall, but they were strong men.
 5. The battle had been for a long time doubtful. 6. The
 inhabitants called upon the gods in the temples. 7. But
 the gods gave the victory to their enemies. 8. The
 Romans put the townsmen to flight with their spears.

¹ In the following vocabularies only the present infinitive of verbs
 whose principal parts are like **amō** will be given.

² Compare **112**, 5.

LESSON XI

PERFECT SYSTEM OF AMŌ

- 114 LEARN the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative, and the perfect infinitive, active and passive, of **amō** (479).

(a) Notice that the perfect system in the active is formed from the perfect stem **amāv-**, which may be obtained by dropping the ending **-ī** of the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. Observe also the additions to this stem, by means of which the pluperfect and future perfect tenses are formed. With what forms of **sum** may they be compared?

(b) Notice that the perfect passive system is compounded of the perfect passive participle **amātus**, *having been loved*, and the proper tenses of **sum**—the present to form the perfect **amātus sum**, the imperfect to form the pluperfect **amātus eram**, and the future to form the future perfect **amātus erō**.

- 115 The participle is declined like the adjective **bonus**, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case exactly like a predicate adjective (63). For example :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
MASC.	puer est amātus ¹	puerī sunt amātī
FEM.	puella est amāta	puellae sunt amātae
NEUT.	dōnum est amātum	dōna sunt amāta

- 116 1. **Amāvī, amātus sum, amātī sumus.** 2. **Amāvit, amāverat, amāverit.** 3. **Amāta es, amāta erās, amāta eris.**

¹ This apparently reversed order is common; the predicate nature of the participle here clearly appears.

4. Amāvistis, amātī estis, amātī eritis. 5. Amāverō, amātus erō, amātus eram. 6. Amāta est, amātae erant, amāta erit. 7. Amātum erat, amāta sunt, amāta erunt. 8. Amāvisti, amāverās, amāveris. 9. Amāvisse, amātus esse. 10. Amāvērunt, amāverant, amāverint.

- 117 1. We loved, we had loved, we shall have loved. 2. We had been loved, you shall have loved, we shall have been loved. 3. You had loved, you had been loved, he has been loved. 4. They have loved, they were loved, they had been loved. 5. To have been loved, to have loved.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

118

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Puerī fābulā delectantur. | <i>The boys are delighted with the story.</i> |
| 2. Quīntus victōriā est laudātus. | <i>Quintus was praised because of his victory.</i> |
| 3. Dominus servōs industriā laudāvit. | <i>The master praised the slaves on account of their industry.</i> |
| 4. Agricola filiōrum causā labōrābit. | <i>The farmer will work for the sake of his sons.</i> |
| 5. Puer ā magistrō diligentīā laudābitur. | <i>The boy will be praised by the schoolmaster for his diligence.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *fābulā*, *victōriā*, *industriā*, etc., answer the question *Why?*—that is, that they express the *Cause* of the action of the verb. Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Cause*, and may be translated by a variety of English phrases, as in the examples above.

- 119 **Rule.**—The Ablative is used to denote Cause.

W. 384; B. 219; AG. 245; H. 475.

120

VOCABULARY

- amicitia**, -ae, f. *friendship, alliance, friendly relations* (**amicus**, 54).
animus, -ī, m. *mind, courage, soul*.
cōpia, -ae, f. *plenty, abundance*.
cōpiae, -ārum, f. plu. *forces, troops*.
expūgnō, -āre, *to take by storm, capture* (**oppūgnō**, 111).
incitō, -āre, *to arouse, stir up*.
diligentia, -ae, f. *carefulness, industry*.
finitimī,¹ m. plu. *neighbors*.
frūmentum, -ī, n. *grain*.
inopia, -ae, f. *want, lack, scarcity*.
odium, -ī, n. *hatred*.
portō, -āre, *to carry, bring*.
superō, -āre, *to defeat, overcome*.
vāstō, -āre, *lay waste*.

- 121 1. Gallī odiō Rōmānōrum² incitātī sunt. 2. Māgnus fuit animus Gallōrum; diū et fortiter pūgnāvērunt. 3. Sed cōpiae oppidānōrum inopiā frūmentī superātae sunt. 4. In oppidō erat cōpia armōrum, nōn frūmentī. 5. Inopiā frūmentī auxilium oppidānīs dabant finitimī. 6. Amicī populī Rōmānī appellātī sunt; causā amicitiae frūmentum portānt. 7. Rōmānī oppidānōs armīs superāvērunt, et sacra templa deōrum vāstāvērunt. 8. Inopiā frūmentī, nōn cōpiīs Rōmānōrum superātī fuerimus. 9. Sed finitimī auxilium miserīs oppidānīs odiō nōn dabunt. 10. Oppidum ab Rōmānīs amicōrum causā expūgnātum est; incolae oppidī fugātī et agrī vastātī sunt.³ 11. Oppidum inimicōrum expūgnāvisse fuit Rōmānīs grātum. 12. Victōriā deōs laudābant Rōmānī et in templa arma portābant.

¹ Also used as an adjective—**fīnitimus**, -a, -um, *neighboring, bordering on*.

² The Latin language here uses the genitive case to represent the English objective case with the preposition *for*.

³ Notice that **sunt** does double duty for both **fugātī** and **vastātī**.

- 122 1. A wall has been built by the inhabitants of the town. 2. The inhabitants of the town built a strong wall on account of (their) many wars. 3. The neighbors had been stirred up by their hatred for the townsmen.¹ 4. The townsmen had been attacked by their neighbors, and because of (their) hatred their fields had been laid waste. 5. The forces in the town fought long and bravely with swords and spears, but the victory was doubtful. 6. The enemies of the Gauls were defeated and pacified by lack of supplies. 7. The Gauls' spirit is great; they will fight long and bravely. 8. A strong wall will be a great protection to the Gauls. 9. The friends of the Romans brought a supply of grain with great diligence; the Romans praised them for their friendship.

LESSON XII

THE DEMONSTRATIVES *HĪC* AND *ILLE*

123

Hĭc, this.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	<i>hĭc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>
GEN.	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>
DAT.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>
ACCU.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>
ABL.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
GEN.	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
ACCU.	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
ABL.	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

¹ Compare 121, 1.

Ille, that.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

(a) Notice that in the plural these pronouns follow closely the regular first and second declensions; but in the singular they differ widely.

124 Both **hic** and **ille** may be used alone as pronouns, or as pronominal adjectives in agreement with nouns.

(a) **Hic** points out something which is near the speaker in time, place, or thought, etc. It is therefore sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person: **hic puer**, *this boy* (near me); **hi librī**, *these books* (by my side, or which I have just mentioned, etc.).

(b) **Ille** points out something which is remote in time, place, thought, etc., from the speaker. It is therefore sometimes known as the demonstrative of the third person: **ille vir**, *that man* (yonder, near him); **illi librī**, *those books* (over there, mentioned some time ago, etc.).

(c) When **ille** and **hic** are contrasted in the same sentence they frequently mean *the former*, *the latter*:

ille bonus, hīc malus est, The former is a good man, the latter bad.

(*d*) *Ille* is sometimes used in the sense of *the well-known, the famous*. It then follows its noun.

125

EXAMPLES

1. *Hīc ager est meus, ille tuus.* *This field is mine, that yours.*
2. *Quīntus et Marcus sunt Rōmānī; ille magister, hīc est discipulus.* *Quintus and Marcus are Romans; the former is the teacher, the latter the pupil.*
3. *Horātius, poēta ille, Rōmānīs fuit cārus.* *Horace, the well-known poet, was dear to the Romans.*

126

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>Belgae, -ārum, m. plu. the Belgians.</i> | <i>intrō, -āre, to enter, go in.</i> |
| <i>coniūrō, -āre, to swear together, plot.</i> | <i>Nervīi, -ōrum, m. plu. the Nervians (a Belgian people).</i> |
| <i>contrā, prep. with accu., against.</i> | <i>numerus, -ī, m. number.</i> |
| <i>Haedui, -ōrum, m. plu. the Haeduians (a Gallic people).</i> | <i>nunc, adv. now.</i> |
| <i>inter, prep. with accu., among, between.</i> | <i>nūntiō, -āre, to send news, report.</i> |
| <i>intereā, adv. meanwhile.</i> | <i>pācō, -āre, to pacify, subdue.</i> |
| | <i>parō, -āre, to get ready, prepare.</i> |

- 127 1. Caesar¹ māgnīs cum cōpiīs agrōs Nervīōrum intrāvit. 2. Hī cum cēterīs Belgīs contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāverant. 3. Multae causae bellī erant illīs cum

¹ The declension of this noun will be given later.

Rōmānīs. 4. Belgae fāmā bellī et odiō Rōmānōrum incitātī erant. 5. Haec Nerviīs ab amīcīs Haeduōrum erant nūntiāta: 6. "Rōmānus ille multa oppida expūgnāvit, oppidānōs miserōs fugāvit, agrōs lātōs vastāvit. 7. Haeduī ab illō multīs proeliīs pācātī,¹ nunc in amīcitiā Rōmānōrum sunt." 8. Nōn amīcī sed servī Rōmānōrum erant. 9. Intereā Rōmānō illī ab inimīcīs Nervīōrum haec erant nūntiāta: 10. "Māgnus numerus Nervīōrum cum cēterīs Belgīs in armīs est. 11. Cōpia frūmentī ab hīs parāta et auxilium ā finitimīs est² datum."

- 128** 1. The Haeduans and the Nervians used to live³ in Gaul. 2. The former were in friendship with the Romans,⁴ but the latter had not yet been subdued. 3. A great number of these on account of their hatred of the Romans conspired with the rest of the Belgians. 4. And because of the scarcity of grain, aid was given them by their neighbors. 5. These, for the sake of their friendship, brought them (i. e., the former) an abundance of grain and of weapons. 6. This was reported to the Romans by their enemies. 7. And Caesar attacked their nearest town. 8. The inhabitants fought long and bravely, but that famous Roman defeated them and laid waste their fields.

¹ Notice that this is the perf. pass. participle agreeing with **Haeduī**, not a part of the indicative mood.

² Compare 121, 10, and notice how sentence 7 above differs from this.

³ What tense?

⁴ Genitive case.

LESSON XIII

THE RELATIVE *QUĪ*

PARADIGM

129

Quī, who, which, what.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	quī	quae	quod
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACCU.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

130

EXAMPLES

1. Puer quī laudātur est bonus. *The boy who is praised is good.*
2. Horātius quem Rōmānī amābant clārus poēta erat. *Horace, whom the Romans loved, was a famous poet.*
3. Hōc est dōnum quod Quintō datum est. *This is the gift which was given to Quintus.*
4. Haec sunt dōna quae Marcus laudābat. *These are the gifts which Marcus praised.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the relatives *quī*, *quem*, *quod*, *quae*, agree with their antecedents in gender and number, but that the cases are determined by the

construction of the relative sentences. Thus in sentences 1 and 3 **quī** and **quod** are the subjects of the relative sentences, and so happen to be in the same case as their antecedents; but in sentences 2 and 4 **quem** and **quae** are accusatives, objects of the verbs in the relative sentences. Their antecedents, however, are both nominative.

- 131 *Rule.*—The Relative Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends on the construction of the clause in which it stands.

W. 299; B. 250; AG. 198; H. 396.

132

VOCABULARY

ab-sum, ab-esse, ā-fui, to be distant from (with ab and the abl.)	hic, adv. here, at this point or place (compare the pronoun hic).
ad, prep. with accu. to, toward.	iam,¹ adv. now, already, at last.
castra, -ōrum, n. plu. a fortified camp.	idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable.
cōnsilium, -ī, n. plan, design.	iuvo, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, to help.
convocō, -āre, call together, assemble.	locus,² -ī, m. place.
dēcertō, -āre, to contend, fight.	longē, adv. far, much (longus, -a, -um).
expectō, -āre, to look out for, wait for, expect.	nātūra, -ae, f. nature.
	parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.
	praeda, -ae, f. booty.
	properō, -āre, to hurry, hasten.

- 133 1. Numerus Nerviorū quī in armīs parātī erant, ab Rēmīs nūntiātus est. 2. Hī, quōrum agrōs Caesar iam

¹ **Iam** means *now at last, already*, while **nunc, 126**, means *now at the present time*.

² The plural is neuter, **loca, -ōrum**; **locī, -ōrum** is used only to mean, *topics*.

intrāverat, proximī Galliae (dat.) erant. 3. Parātī erant Rōmānōs frūmentō et māgnīs cōpiīs iuvāre. 4. Cēterī Belgae, quī amīcī Nerviorū erant, Rōmānōs exspectābant. 5. Rōmānī illō locō,¹ quī nātūrā proeliō (dat.) erat idōneus, ā Belgīs expectātī erant. 6. Hōc locō, quī ab castrīs Rōmānōrū nōn longē aberat, contrā populum Rōmānum armīs decertābunt Nervii. 7. Ubi (when) Rōmānō illī cōsiliū Nerviorū nūntiātum est, ad locum properāvit. 8. Intereā Nervii cum animīs ad proelium parātīs illum ibi exspectābant. 9. Hīc inter Rōmānōs et Belgōs diū et fortiter pūgnātum est.² 10. Illī victōriae et praedae causā, hī prō³ liberīs et patriā pūgnāverunt.

- 134** 1. Caesar called together those⁴ Belgians who had not conspired together. 2. These who were ready to contend in battle were the Remi. 3. The Haeduan, whose towns had been captured by the Romans, aided them with grain. 4. The Romans hurried to a place which was naturally suited for a camp. 5. They prepared supplies and assembled their allies at (ad) this place. 6. The camp was not far away from the place where the Nervii had already been waiting for them a long time. 7. They fought for the sake of their country, which they loved. 8. But the Romans had entered Gaul for the sake of booty.

¹ Abl. of place.

² This form of the verb has no personal subject, but supplies its subject (cf. *pūgna*, *battle*, *fighting*) in itself. Translate, *There was a battle*, or in a similar way. Such a verb is called an Impersonal Verb.

³ A common preposition with the abl., *for the sake of*.

⁴ Use the proper case of *ille*.

LESSON XIV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE IS
THE INTERROGATIVE QUIS

PARADIGMS

135

Is, that.

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., VOC.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

(a) Notice the similarity in the declension of *is*, *hic*, and *ille*.

(b) *Is, that*, is in meaning like *ille*, but less definite; it often means simply *he, she, it*, and is very common as an antecedent of *quī*: *is quī oppidum expūgnāvit, he who stormed the town; ea quae portāvit that which he brought.*

136

Quis, who?

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE AND FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	quis	quid
GEN.	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

PLURAL

Like **quī** relative.

(a) **Quis** is the substantive form of the interrogative —i. e., the form used without a noun : **quis vocat?** *Who calls?*

(b) The adjective form is **quī**, *what? what kind of?* **Quī puer vocat?** *What boy calls?* **Quod dōnum portāvit?** *What gift did he bring?* This **quī** is declined exactly like **quī** relative.¹

137

EXAMPLES

1. **Magister diligentiam ēius laudāvit.** *The teacher praised his industry.*
2. **Is, quī cum diligentīā labōrāvit, laudātus est.** *The one who worked industriously was praised.*
3. **Quis discipulum laudāvit?** *Who praised the pupil?*
4. **Quī magister diligentiam discipulī laudāvit?** *What teacher praised the pupil's industry?*
5. **Quod dōnum dabit magister ei, quī cum diligentīā labōrāvit?** *What gift will the teacher give to the one who worked industriously?*

¹ It should be said that the distinction between substantive **quis?** and adjective **quī?** was not always observed by Roman writers. Thus we find **quis vir vocat?** as well as **quī vir vocat?** Yet it will be well in translating the English exercises of this book to observe the distinction made above.

138

VOCABULARY

comparō, -āre, to get ready, get together.	mora, -ae, f. delay.
concilium, -i, n. conference, a meeting of state or of war.	nam, conj. for.
in, prep. with accu., into. (Compare in with abl., 56.)	noster, -tra, -trum, our (compare meus).
légātus, -i, m. envoy, ambassador.	postulō, -āre, to demand, ask for.
	reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, the rest. (Compare cēteri, 80.)
	socius, -i, m. ally.

- 139** 1. Quī Gallī contrā amīcōs nostrōs coniūrāvērunt? 2. Illī erant Nervī et cēteri Belgae. 3. Sociī populī Rōmānī erant Haeduī, finitimī Nerviorū, quī ab Rōmānīs pācātī erant. 4. Iī nunc cōpiam frūmentī ab illīs postulābant. 5. Quā dē causā erant¹ Nervī contrā Rōmānōs incitāti? 6. Odiō populī Rōmānī quī ōlim Haeduōs pācāvērunt. 7. Iam ab eis erat concilium Belgārū convocātum. 8. Quod cōsiliū eō in conciliō ab Haeduīs est datum? 9. Hōc cōsiliū datum est: reliquōs Belgās incitāre, sine morā cōpiam frūmentī comparāre, cōpiās in oppidum proximum convocāre. 10. Ibi Rōmānōs expectāre et cum eis prō patriā dēcertāre erat cōsiliū. 11. Ā quibus erant haec Rōmānō illī nuntiāta? Ab lēgātīs Rēmōrū, quī nostrī amīcī diū fuerant. 12. Nam cum reliquīs Belgīs nōn coniūrāverant et auxilium Rōmānīs dare parātī erant.

- 140** 1. For what reason did the Remi not conspire with the rest of the Belgae? 2. The rest of the Belgae were already in arms, but these were our allies. 3. They were prepared to give aid with supplies of grain. 4. What was the

¹ The forms of **sum** are frequently thus separated in position from the perfect participles to which they belong grammatically.

plan of the Nervii? 5. Their plan was to call together an assembly of the Belgians, and on account of lack of supplies to demand aid from their neighbors. 6. These brought the grain which had been asked for, but the Remi conspired with the Romans against the rest of the Gauls. 7. And so their fields were devastated by the Nervii and their allies. 8. In the meantime, Caesar had subdued the Haeduans and had taken by storm a great number of their towns. 9. Who were these and whose allies had they been?

LESSON XV

THE THIRD DECLENSION

141 THE stem ends in a consonant or -i.

All consonant stems may be found by dropping the ending -is of the genitive singular: *prīncip-is*, *rēg-is*.

Consonant stems are divided into two classes, Mute and Liquid Stems, according to the nature of the final consonant. Mute Stems end in b or p, c or g, d or t (6).

142

MUTE STEMS

PARADIGMS

Princeps, m. *chief*.

prīncip-

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	<i>prīnceps</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
GEN.	<i>prīncipis</i>	<i>prīncipum</i>
DAT.	<i>prīncipī</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>
ACCU.	<i>prīncipem</i>	<i>prīncipēs</i>
ABL.	<i>prīncipe</i>	<i>prīncipibus</i>

	Rēx , m. <i>king</i> . rēg-	Miles , m. <i>soldier</i> . milit-
	SINGULAR	
NOM., Voc.	rēx	mīles
GEN.	rēgis	mīlitis
DAT.	rēgī	mīlitī
ACCU.	rēgem	mīlitem
ABL.	rēge	mīlite
	PLURAL	
NOM., Voc.	rēgēs	mīlitēs
GEN.	rēgum	mīlitum
DAT.	rēgibus	mīlitibus
ACCU.	rēgēs	mīlitēs
ABL.	rēgibus	mīlitibus

(a) Notice that the nominatives singular of these nouns ends in **-s**. Stems in **b** or **p** retain their final consonants unchanged before this ending: **urbs**, **prīnceps**; when stems end in **c** or **g**, the final consonant combines with **-s** to form **x**: (**dūc-s**) **dūx**, (**rēg-s**) **rēx**; but stems ending in **d** or **t** drop their final consonants before **-s** of the nominative: (**custōd-s**) **custōs**, (**mīlit-s**) **mīles**.

(b) Notice also that the last vowel of the stem is sometimes changed in the nominative: **mīlit-**, **mīles**, etc.

These few changes can easily be learned by observation.

143 Make a list of the terminations and commit it to memory.

Decline together: **hīc prīnceps**; **rēx ille**; **is mīles**.

144 VOCABULARY

administrō, **-āre**, *to manage*. **comes**, **comitis**, m. and f.
ante, prep. with accu. *before*. *companion, attendant*.

coniūnx , coniugis, f. <i>consort</i> ,	lūx , lūcis, f. <i>light</i> .
<i>wife</i> .	miles , militis, m. <i>soldier</i> .
custōs , custōdis, m. <i>guard</i> ,	pāx , pācis, f. <i>peace</i> .
<i>keeper</i> .	princeps , principis, m. <i>leader</i> ,
dux , ducis, m. <i>leader</i> .	<i>chief</i> .
grex , gregis, m. <i>flock, herd</i> .	rēx , rēgis, m. <i>king</i> .
iūdex , iūdicis, m. <i>judge</i> .	vulnerō , -āre, <i>to wound</i> .

- 145 (a) 1. Hī quī coniūrābant et bellum administrābant erant prīncipēs Galliae. 2. Concilium eōrum, quī agrōs populī Rōmānī intrābant, ā rēge convocātum est. 3. Ab eō locō, quī nātūrā castrīs idōneus erat, milītēs Rōmānī nōn longē aberant. 4. Nam oppidum quod erat in viā iam expūgnāverant et ad sociōs properābant. 5. Hīc, inter castra Gallōrum et oppidum nostrum, errābant multī gregēs. 6. Quōrum custōdēs, miserī servī rēgis, ā militibus fugātī erant. 7. Ante lūcem incolae oppidī coniugēs et liberōs in silvās portāverant, arma comparāverant, ducem expectābant.

(b) 8. Eō locō inter milītēs rēgis et Caesaris diū et fortiter pūgnātum est¹ et multī vulnerātī sunt. 9. Gallī, quī ōlim cum Rōmānīs pūgnāverant, iam pācis causā eōs iuvāre parātī erant. 10. Sed Rōmānī inopiā frūmentī agrōs eōrum vastāre et sociōs nostrōs iuvāre parābant. 11. In cēterīs oppidīs māgna cōpia frūmentī erat; hōc Caesarī (dat.) ab lēgātīs Rēmōrum et comitibus rēgis nūntiātum est. 12. Inter custōdēs gregum et comitēs meōs erit iūdex Caesar.

- 146 1. Owing to lack of supplies Caesar prepared to lay waste the lands of the Gauls. 2. The Gauls, whose wives and children were in the forests, fought for (prō) their lives² with swords and spears. 3. In the fields there were many flocks, of which the king's children were the guards.

¹ Compare 133, 9.

² Use the singular.

4. The leader's plan was to help the allies of the Roman people and to pacify the other Gauls. 5. Before daylight he called the principal men of Gaul, together with¹ the king, into the camp. 6. Here Caesar announced his plan in regard to peace. 7. "I will be judge between the Remi and the other peoples of Gaul, and for the sake of peace I will give you many gifts." 8. The Gauls were ready to assist the Romans with grain, which had been in their towns for a long time.

147

READING EXERCISE

Dē antīquīs rēgibus Rōmānī haec narrant: p̄mus quī in Ītaliā rēgnāvit² erat Sātūrnus. Hīc nōn longē ab Iāniculō³ arcem (*citadel*) condidit (*founded*) quam Sātūrniam appellāvit. Agricultūram⁴ quoque Ītalōs p̄mus docuit (*taught*). Postēā (*afterwards*) Latīnus in illīs locīs rēgnāvit. Sub (*under*) hōc rēge Trōia in Asiā ab Graecīs expūgnāta est. Itaque Aenēas, clārus Trōiānus, Anchīsae⁵ et deae filius, cum multīs sociīs ex patriā aufūgit⁶ (*fled*) et in Ītaliā pervēnit (*came*). Ibi rēx Latīnus eī filiā Lāvīniam dedit. Aenēas oppidum condidit, quod Lāvīnium appellavit. Tertiū rēx erat Ascanius, Aenēae filius, quī rēgnū⁷ (*throne*) in aliū (*another*) locū trānstulit (*transferred*), et in monte (*mountain*) Albānō novū oppidum condidit, quod Albam Longam appellāvit. Hōc locō multī rēgnāvērunt, dum (*until*) Rōmulus, quī Rheae Silviae et dēi filius erat, in monte Palātiō Rōmā condidit.

¹ *Together with*, translate by one word.

² **rēgnō**, **-āre**, is a verb formed from the same base as **rēx** (**rēg-**). What must the verb mean?

³ The high ridge across the Tiber from Rome.

⁴ Guess the meaning.

⁵ Gen. sing. of the Greek name **Anchīsēs**.

⁶ Perf. indic. of **aufūgiō**: compare **fugō**, **-āre**.

⁷ What other words have the same stem?

LESSON XVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION

MUTE STEMS (*Continued*)

148

PARADIGMS

Vōx, f. *voice*. **Obses**, m. and f. *hostage*. **Virtūs**, f. *manliness*,
vōc- **obsid-** **virtūt-** [*courage*].

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC. *	vōx	obses	virtūs
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis
DAT.	vōcī	obsidī	virtūtī
ACCU.	vōcem	obsidem	virtūtem
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtūte

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtūtum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus
ACCU.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtūtibus

Caput, n. *head*.
capit-

SINGULAR

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	caput	capita
GEN.	capitis	capitum
DAT.	capitī	capitibus
ACCU.	caput	capita
ABL.	capite	capitibus

(a) Notice the manner in which the nominatives of **vōx**, **obses**, and **virtūs** are formed, and compare them with the similar nouns in the preceding lesson.

(b) Notice that the nominative of **caput** is the simple stem with the second vowel changed from **ī** to **ū**. Compare the declension of this noun with that of neuters of the Second Declension (60).

ABLATIVE OF MANNER

149

EXAMPLES

1. **Rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit.** *The king fought with boldness.*
2. **Rēx magnā cum audāciā pūgnāvit.** *The king fought with great boldness.*
3. **Rēx magnā audāciā pūgnāvit.** *The king fought with great boldness.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives answer the question, *How?* That is, they tell the manner in which the king fought. Such an ablative is called an *Ablative of Manner*.¹

150

Rule.—The manner of an action is expressed by the Ablative, usually with *cum*; but if the Ablative is modified by an adjective, *cum* need not be used.

W. 390; B. 220; AG. 248; H. 473, 3.

151

VOCABULARY

audācia , -ae, f. <i>boldness</i> ,	Germānī , -ōrum, m. <i>Germans</i> .
caput , capitis , n. <i>head</i> .	laus , laudis , f. <i>praise, glory</i> .
celeriter , adv. <i>quickly</i> .	māgnoperē , adv. <i>greatly</i> .

¹ The same idea is frequently expressed in Latin as in English by an adverb: **rēx audācter (boldly) pūgnāvit** = **rēx cum audāciā pūgnāvit**.

obses, obsidis, m. and f. <i>hos- tage.</i>	sacerdōs, sacerdōtis, m. <i>priest.</i>
occupō, -āre, <i>to seize.</i>	vester, -tra, -trum, <i>your.</i>
per, prep. with accu. <i>through, by means of.</i>	(Compare noster , 138.) virtūs, virtūtis, f. <i>manliness, courage.</i>
prō, prep. with abl. <i>for, for the sake of.</i>	vōx, vōcis, f. <i>voice, word.</i>

152 1. Dē audāciā eōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrābant iam erat nūntiātum.¹ 2. Sed Caesar obsidēs, quōrum māgnus numerus erat, celeriter convocāvit et per sacerdōtem hāec nūntiāvit. 3. “Māgnā virtūte, obsidēs, pūgnāvērunt Gallī et vestrī sociī, et māgna per Galliam est laus eōrum. 4. Itaque eōs māgnoperē laudō; semper amīcī et sociī populī Rōmānī appellābuntur. 5. Nam eī fortiter prō patriā et liberīs dēcertāvērunt. 6. Sed nunc arma et auxilia ā comitibus rēgis contrā Rōmānōs parantur; castra nostra cum audāciā oppūgnābunt. 7. Sed parātus sum eōs in amīcitiā habēre,² dōna dare, bellum cum Germānīs administrāre.” 8. Haec sacerdōs māgnā vōce nūntiāvit et obsidēs, quī principēs Galliae erant, ā Caesare cum cūrā servābantur. 9. Intereā Belgae, quī ōlim pācātī erant, frūmentī cōpiam per lēgātōs dare properāvērunt. 10. Haec Caesarī erant grāta; itaque multa oppida Germānōrum celeriter occupāvit et cōpias eōrum fugāvit.

153 1. In the camp were many hostages, who had been protected (servō) by the Romans with great care. 2. They were the chief men of Gaul who once had fought with great bravery against Caesar and the Romans. 3. Before daybreak Caesar called a priest, who made the following announcement³ to the hostages in a loud voice. 4. “You (vōs), together with the Britons, once (ōlim)

¹ Compare 133, 9.

² Present infin. of **habēō**, *to have, to hold.*

³ Translate, *announced these things.*

conspired against the friends of the Roman people and prepared to lay waste their territory and to seize their towns. 5. Your glory among the Gauls was great, but you have been defeated by Caesar and your towns seized. 6. Now you have helped the Roman soldiers with a supply of grain; therefore he praises you (*vōs*) and will give your kings many rewards. 7. He is ready to help your allies, the Britons, a great number of whom were formerly in the friendship of the Roman people, and to be at peace with them." 8. Without delay Caesar's ambassadors carried this news¹ throughout Gaul and Britain; a great number of the Gauls and Britons were thus quickly pacified.

LESSON XVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

154 Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

THE stems end in -l or -r, -n, and -s.

155 PARADIGMS

Cōsul, m. *consul*. **Victor**, m. *victor*. **Homō**, m. and f. *man*.
cōsul- **vīctōr-** **homin-**

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cōsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōsulis	vīctōris	hominis
DAT.	cōsulī	vīctōrī	hominī
ACCU.	cōsulem	vīctōrem	hominem
ABL.	cōsule	vīctōre	homine

¹ Haec.

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cōsulēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōsulūm	vīctōrūm	hominūm
DAT.	cōsulibus	vīctōribus	hominibus
ACCU.	cōsulēs	vīctōrēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōsulibus	vīctōribus	hominibus

Nōmen , n. <i>name</i> .	Honor , m. <i>honor</i> .	Corpus , n. <i>body</i> .
nōmin-	honōs-	corpos-

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACCU.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminum	honōrum	corporum
DAT.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
ACCU.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

(a) Notice that liquid stems like **cōsul-** and **vīctōr-** form the nominative singular without the case-ending.

(b) Notice also that nasal stems like **homin-** not only have no case-ending in the nominative singular, but drop the final **-n**; the nominative generally ends in **-ō**. This is true of almost all masculine and feminine nouns of this class. Neuter stems like **nōmin-** have the nominative like the stem, changing the final vowel from **i** to **e**.

(c) In the case of spirant stems like **honōs-** and **corpos-**, the **s** is always changed to **r** between two vowels, so that the stem seems to end in the liquid **r**. The nominative has no case-ending, but the nominatives of a few

common nouns of this class¹ have the *r* of the apparent stem; in neuters the last vowel, *e* or *o*, of the stem is regularly modified to *u* before *s*.

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

156

EXAMPLES

1. *Amor patriae est māgnus.* *Love of country is great.*
2. *Timōre militum in oppidum properant.* *Because of their fear of the soldiers they are hurrying into the town.*
3. *Avidī laudis erant Galli.* *The Gauls were eager for praise.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the genitives *patriae*, *militum*, *laudis*, are the objects of the feelings expressed in the nouns *amor*, *timōre*, and the adjective *avidī*. Such a genitive is called an *Objective Genitive*. Compare the genitive of Possessor (35).

- 157 *Rule.*—The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives to denote the Object of the action or feeling implied in the word it modifies.

W. 351; B. 200. 204; AG. 217. 218; H. 440, 2. 450.

158

VOCABULARY

<i>adpropinquō, -āre, to approach.</i>	<i>cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. consul.</i>
<i>amor, amōris, m. love.</i>	<i>corpus, corporis, n. body.</i>
<i>apud, prep. with the accusative, among.</i>	<i>homō, hominis, m. and f. human being, man.</i>
<i>arbor, arboris, f. tree.</i>	<i>honor, honōris, m. honor.</i>
<i>avidus, -a, -um, eager.</i>	<i>iter, itineris, n. journey, march, route.</i>
<i>clāmor, clāmōris, m. shout, noise (of shouting).</i>	<i>labor, labōris, m. work, labor.</i>
	<i>neque . . . neque, neither, nor.</i>

¹ E. g., *arbor*, *f. tree*; *clāmor*, *m. shout*; *color*, *m. color*; *dolor*, *m. pain*.

nōmen, nōminis, n. name.
occultō, -āre, to hide.

pecus, pecoris, n. flock,¹ herd
(grex, 144).

timor, timōris, m. fear.

Vertiscus, -ī, m. Vertiscus (a
chieftain of the Remi).

vīctor, vīctoris, m. victor
(vīctoria, 111).

- 159 1. *Māgnus erat Rōmānīs militibus amor laudis.*
 2. *Itaque ante lūcem sine morā māgnō militum clāmōre*
et labōre ad mūrū Caesar cōsul properāvit. 3. *Iter*
erat per agrōs sociōrum, ubi arborēs erant multae et
māgnae. 4. *Intereā Belgae, qui timōre Rōmānōrum*
gregēs et pecora in silvīs occultāverant, dēcertāre parā-
bant. 5. *Belgae māgna corpora et longōs gladiōs habē-*
bant; semper avidī laudis fuerant. 6. *Sed apud Rēmōs*
erat vir filiae rēgis, Vertiscus nōmine.² 7. *Itaque ille vir,*
prīnceps et dūx, amīcus erat multōrum Belgārum et
māgnō in honōre erat apud cōsulem Rōmānum. 8. *Eā*
dē causā Caesar eum et comitēs eius celeriter vocāvit et
haec eis dē pāce per sacerdotē nuntiāvit. 9. *“Belgae*
sunt caput hūius bellī, sed neque odiō illōrum neque
praedae causā ad oppidum properāmus. 10. *Belgae Ger-*
mānos frūmentō et militibus contrā Rōmānōs iuvant; ab
eīs agrī sociōrum nostrōrum vastantur. 11. *Nunc prae-*
mium hūius bellī est Rōmānīs laus māgna, illis vīta;
vīctōres erimus.”

- 160 1. The road to the town lay³ through the country of
 the Haeduans. 2. In the fields were many men and many
 herds with keepers. 3. The inhabitants were already
 approaching the town with their wives and children
 because of their fear of the Roman consul. 4. In the
 meantime Caesar hastened by forced⁴ marches from the

¹ *Pecus* and *grex* are frequently used without distinction, but
pecus is used particularly of small cattle, a flock of sheep, etc.

² *By name.*

³ *Was.*

⁴ Use the right case of *māgnus*.

camp to the town, which he attacked before dawn. 5. In the German's camp was a famous man, Ariovistus by name,¹ who had many friends among the allies of the Romans. 6. The Belgians had been victors, for they were helped by these men with grain and horses. 7. The Germans had brought a large number of trees, and with great labor had got ready a wall before the town. 8. They fought with great courage and from love of country.

LESSON XVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

Stems in -ī

161

MASCULINE AND FEMININE STEMS

PARADIGMS

Cīvis , m. <i>citizen</i> .	Hostis , m. and f.	Nūbēs , f. <i>cloud</i> .
cīvi-	<i>enemy</i> .	nūbi-
	hosti-	

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	cīvis	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	nūbī
ACCU.	cīvem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	cīvī, -e	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	cīvēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	cīvis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	nūbīs, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus

¹ Compare 159, 6.

(a) Notice that the singular of **hostis** and **nūbēs** differs from that of mute stems only in the nominative; but that the plural differs in the genitive and accusative.

(b) Not many nouns of frequent occurrence belong to this class; the most common of those declined like **cīvis** are **finis**, m. *end*, and **īgnis**, m. *fire*; in the latter the ablative **īgni** is rare; **īgne** is the common form.

(c) A few nouns have the accu. sing. ending in **-im**, abl. sing in **-ī**; these will be noted in the vocabularies.

162

NEUTER STEMS

Mare, n. *sea*.
mari-

Animal, n. *creature*.
animālī-

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	mare	animal
GEN.	maris	animālīs
DAT.	marī	animālī
ACCU.	mare	animal
ABL.	marī	animālī

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	maria	animālīa
GEN.	_____ ¹	animālīum
DAT.	maribus	animālībus
ACCU.	maria	animālīa
ABL.	maribus	animālībus

(a) Notice that neuter nouns of this class have only **-ī** in the ablative singular, and always **-ia** in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural.

¹ The genitive plural of **mare** is found but once, and then has the form **marum**.

163 To the class of *-ī* stems belong :

(1) Nouns of the third declension ending in *is* or *-ēs*, mostly feminine, or in *-e*, neuter, not increasing in the genitive.¹

(2) Neuters ending in *-al* and *-ar*.

164

VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, n. <i>living creature</i> .	hostis, hostis, m. and f. <i>enemy</i> .
caedēs, caedis, f. <i>slaughter</i> .	ignis, ignis, m. <i>fire</i> .
cīvis, cīvis, m. and f. <i>citizen</i> .	impetrō, -āre, <i>to obtain</i> (one's request).
clādēs, clādis, f. <i>loss, disaster</i> .	mare, maris, n. <i>sea</i> .
collis, collis, m. <i>hill</i> .	moenia, moenium, n. plu. <i>walls, ramparts</i> (of a town).
conlocō, -āre, <i>to place, to station</i> .	nūbēs, nūbis, f. <i>cloud</i> .
ē, ex, ² prep. with the abl. <i>out of, from</i> .	post, prep. with the accu. <i>after, behind</i> .
et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i> .	-que, <i>and</i> . ³
fīnis, finis, m. <i>end; plu. boundaries, territory</i> .	rogō, -āre, <i>to ask for</i> . ⁴
frāter, frātris, m. <i>brother</i> .	turris, turris, ⁵ f. <i>tower</i> .

165 1. Prīncipēs eius cōnsilī et dūcēs hostium erant Germānī. 2. Inter Nerviōs is quī sacerdos iūdexque appellā-

¹ That is, having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative singular.

² *Ē* is used before consonants only; *ex* before both vowels and consonants. Compare *ā, ab*.

³ Always attached to the second of a pair of words: *terrā marīque, on land and sea*. Compare *-ne*.

⁴ The thing asked for and the person from whom it is asked are both in the accusative: *cōnsulem auxilium rogant, they ask the consul for aid*.

⁵ Accu. sing. ends occasionally in *im*; 161, c.

bātur, māgnā vōce haec nūntiāvit. 3. "Hostēs iam et pecora et gregēs timōre militum nostrōrum in silvīs occultant." 4. Cōnsilium est rēgis, cūius frāter in amicitia nostrā ōlim erat, cīvīs contrā nostrōs¹ incitāre et oppidum oppugnāre. 5. Māgnus est eīs numerus equōrum, quibus celeriter et cum audāciā in nostrōs finis properāvērunt; iam moenibus adpropinquant. 6. Sed in nostrīs collibus parātī sunt ignēs, ante moenia sunt custōdēs; oppidum expugnāre nōn poterunt,² sed māgna erit clādēs eōrum. 7. In vestrīs collibus, Germānī, sunt nova animālia, quōrum fāma apud Rōmānōs māgna est. 8. Turrēs, quae in colle post oppidum erant, iam nūbibus occultābantur. Itaque cōnsul moenibus oppidī sine clāde adpropinquābat. 9. Ante lūcem pūgnātum est māgnā virtūte ā Rōmānīs sociīsque inter mare et castra. Hī ex oppidō in silvās māgnā caede fugātī sunt. 10. Itaque cōnsulem Rōmānum auxilium et rogābunt et impetrābunt socii nostrī.

- 166 1. The cause of the war was hatred for both the king and his companions. 2. The king's brother was a leader and a chief among the Belgians, and had been greatly praised for his bravery and patriotism;³ he asked the Romans for help.⁴ 3. The enemy had prepared fires on the hills, and in company with the Germans were already hastening by forced marches into their territory. 4. The Nervii fought from the walls, but the enemy built towers on the hill which was behind the town. 5. The slaughter was not great, for the enemy fought with small spears, and the Nervii had swords.

¹ Used substantively, *our men, our soldiers*.

² The future indicative of *possum, can, be able*. What person and number is it?

³ Translate, *love of country*.

⁴ Compare 165, 10.

6. Quickly and fearlessly¹ the rest of the enemy approached over² the hills, which were already hidden by the clouds. 7. The Nervii were neighbors of those who had conspired together, and after the battle they entered their lands for plunder.

LESSON XIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

167

MIXED STEMS

PARADIGMS

Arx, f. *citadel*. **Urbs**, f. *city*. **Cliēns**, m. *client*.
arc(i)- **urb(i)-** **client(i)-**

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	arx	urbs	cliēns
GEN.	arcis	urbis	clientis
DAT.	arci	urbī	clientī
ACCU.	arcem	urbem	clientem
ABL.	arce	urbe	cliente

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
GEN.	arcium	urbium	clientium
DAT.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
ACCU.	arcēs, -īs	urbēs, -īs	clientēs, -īs
ABL.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

¹ Translate, *without fear*.² Use *per*.

(a) Notice that these nouns are declined like consonant stems in the singular, but show the peculiarities of *i* stems in the plural. No sharp distinction can be made between nouns of this class and nouns like **hostis** and **nubēs** which are classed under *i* stems.

168 To the class of Mixed Stems belong:

(1) Most monosyllables in **-s** and **-x** preceded by a consonant, as **arx**, **urbs**, etc.

(2) Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**, as **cliēns**, **cohors**, etc.

169

VOCABULARY

arx, **arcis**, f. *citadel*.

civitās, **civitatīs**,¹ f. *state*,
citizenship (**civis**, 164).

cliēns, **clientis**, m. *client*.

cohors, **cohortis**, f. *cohort* (a
military body of 300–360
men).

eques, **equitis**, m. *horseman*
(**equus**, 80).

etiam, adv. *even*.

flūmen, **flūminis**, n. *river*.

fuga, **fugae**, f. *flight* (**fugō**).

gēns, **gentis**, f. *clan, family*,
tribe.

legiō, **legiōnis**, f. *legion* (a
military body made up of
ten **cohortēs**).

mōns, **montis**, m. *mountain*.

mors, **mortis**, f. *death*.

nāvis,² **nāvis**, f. *ship* (**nāvigō**,
56; **nauta**, 47).

pōns, **pontis**, m. *bridge*.

quiēs, **quiētis**, f. *quiet, peace*.

rīpa, **rīpae**, f. *bank* (of a
stream).

urbs, **urbis**, f. *city*.

170 1. Inter hostīs erant multī quī clientēs populī Rōmānī
ōlim fuerant. 2. Hī ex fugā in castra nostra errāverant,
ubi eōs victor cōsul, Quīntus nōmine,³ cum cūrā servābat

¹ Feminine nouns in **-ās**, **-ātis**, sometimes have the genitive plural in **-ium**, accusative plural in **-ēs**, **-īs**, like mixed stems; but for the present they are treated as consonant stems.

² Usually declined like **civis**, rarely like **turris**.

³ Compare 159, 6.

et obsidum locō¹ habēbat. 3. Eques rēgī eōrum, quī nōn longē ab eā urbe in colle aberat, cōnsilium hostium nūntiāvit. 4. Intereā cōsul clientēs Rōmānōrum in nāvibus celeriter ad rīpam flūminis portāvit; ibi erat locus castris idōneus. 5. Māgnū numerum armōrum hūius bellī causā gentēs Germānōrum comparāverant et iam in finīs Gallōrum properābant. 6. Post arcem, quae in colle erat, hostēs māgnō labōre pontem parāverant; et ibi et in arce proelium exspectābant. 7. Māgna erit etiam in morte laus eōrum quī prō patriā cum audāciā dēcertāverunt. 8. Inter mare et montem in quō ignēs hostium erant, māgnā cum caede Gallōrum pūgnātum est. 9. Post rēgis mortem reliquī hostēs fugantur; haec cōsulī nūntiantur. Māgnō amōre praedae legiōnes Rōmānae ad rīpam properant. 10. Iam neque quiēs neque pāx in Galliā erat, sed ab ōceanō marīque ad flūmen Germānōrum bellum et arma.

- 171 1. The states of Gaul were aroused to war by their hatred of the Roman citizens. These with their² clients were in the Gauls' cities and towns. 2. Therefore the consul, whose name was Quintus,³ together with his² brother, hastened by forced marches into Gaul. 3. He did not have many horsemen, but he got ready towers in a suitable place on a hill. 4. Many ships had been built by the allies of the Roman people, and these were not far away. 5. The enemy had many fires on the hills and mountains, and they awaited the battle and death with great courage. 6. The slaughter was great, both of the

¹ locō, abl. *in place of* = *as*.

² Omit.

³ This may be translated as in 170, 2; we may also say *cui* (dat. of possessor) *nōmen erat Quīntō* or *cui nōmen erat Quīntus*. The predicate dative *Quīntō*, agreeing with *cui*, is more common than the predicate nominative *Quīntus*, agreeing with *nōmen*.

Romans and of those who were fighting bravely for their¹ country. 7. The Gauls were conquered, but the Romans, though victorious,² did not lay waste their lands.

LESSON XX

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

RULES FOR GENDER

172 THE following rules will help to fix the gender of a majority of the nouns of the Third Declension, but it is important and easy to learn the gender of each noun when it is first met.

(1) Masculine are nouns in -ō, -or, -ōs, -er, -ēs (gen. -itis, -idis): *ōrdō*, *order*, *rank*, *victor*, *mōs*, *custom*, *agger*, *mound*, *eques*, etc.

(2) Feminine are nouns in -ās, -ēs (gen. -is), -is; -x and -s (after a consonant); -dō, and collective and abstract nouns in -iō: *civitās*, *nūbēs*, *nāvis*, *arx*, *urbs*, *multitūdō*, *legiō*.

(3) Neuter are nouns in -e, -l, -n, -t; -us: *mare*, *animal*, *nōmen*, *caput*, *corpus*.

ACCUSATIVE OF TIME

173

EXAMPLES

1. *Tōtam aestātem labōrat.* *He works the entire summer.*
2. *Septem noctēs continuās* *He attacked the town for*
oppidum oppugnābat. *seven nights in succession.*

¹ Omit.² Though victorious, simply *vīctōrēs*.

(a) Notice that in these sentences the accusatives *tōtam aestātem*, *septem noctēs continuās* answer the question *How long?* That is, they express the time during which the action of the verb continues. Such an accusative is called an *Accusative of Duration of Time*.

- 174 **Rule.**—Duration of Time is expressed by the Accusative.
W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256; H. 417.

ABLATIVE OF TIME

175

EXAMPLES

1. *Hieme noctēs sunt longae.* *In winter the nights are long.*
2. *Primā lūce hostēs oppidum oppugnābunt.* *At daybreak the enemy will attack the town.*
3. *Septem proximis annis Gallōs pācāvit.* *Within the last seven years he has subdued the Gauls.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives *hieme*, *primā lūce*, *septem proximis annis*, answer the questions *When?* *Within what time?* Such an ablative is called the *Ablative of Time At Which or Within Which*.

- 176 **Rule.**—The Time At Which or Within Which an action takes place is expressed by the Ablative.
W. 406. 407; B. 230. 231; AG. 256; H. 486. 487.

177

VOCABULARY

<i>aestās</i> , -ātis, ¹ f. <i>summer</i> .	<i>hiems</i> , -mis, f. <i>winter</i> .
<i>annus</i> , -i, m. <i>year</i> .	<i>hōra</i> , -ae, f. <i>hour</i> .
<i>cōfirmō</i> , -āre, to make firm, establish.	<i>nox</i> , <i>noctis</i> , f. <i>night</i> .
<i>continuus</i> , -a, -um, consecutive, in succession.	<i>primus</i> , -a, -um, <i>first</i> .
<i>hiemō</i> , -āre, to spend the winter.	<i>proximus</i> , -a, -um, <i>nearest</i> , last.
	<i>septem</i> , indeclinable, ² <i>seven</i> .
	<i>septimus</i> , -a, -um, <i>seventh</i> .

¹ Hereafter the entire form of the genitive will not be given, but only so much as is necessary to show the declension.

² That is, having the same form for all genders and cases.

tertius, -a, -um, *third*.

trāns, prep. with accu.

tōtus,¹ -a, -um, *whole, en-*

across.

tire.

vigilia, -ae, f. *watch*.

- 178 1. Tertiā vigiliā cōsulis frāter, cui nōmen erat Marcō,² equitēs et legiōnēs in colle proximō conlocāvit ubi hostīs exspectābat. 2. Hī nocte per finīs Nerviōrum celeriter properāvērunt et primā lūce nōn longē ab castris Rōmānōrum aberant. 3. Coniugēs et liberī Gallōrum hīs proximīs noctibus in oppidīs et urbibus conlocātī³ erant. 4. Septem hōrās continuās ab Rōmānīs et ab Gallīs māgnā cum caede pūgnābātur. 5. Hostēs superātī sunt et obsidēs dabant; sed ab reliquīs Gallīs semper māgnoperē laudābantur. 6. Pāx cōfirmāta est septimā aestāte inter eōs Gallōs quī in armīs erant et Rōmānōs; iam multōs annōs per Galliam quīēs fuerat. 7. Haec victōria Rōmānōrum cēterīs Gallīs et Germānīs ab eīs gentibus, quae finitimae erant, māgnō clāmōre nūntiāta erat. 8. Post multōs annōs gentēs Germāniae bellum contrā victōrēs Rōmānōs parābant; septem noctēs continuās ignēs in montibus collibusque vidēbantur.⁴ 9. Sed tōtam proximam hiemem cōsul Rōmānus cum septem cohortibus apud Gallōs hiemāverat. 10. Iam frāter cōsulis cum legiōnibus tertiā et septimā⁵ māgnīs itineribus ex Italiā ad cōsulem in Galliam properābat.

- 179 1. The third summer Caesar hastened into the territory of the Belgians and stationed his cohorts on the

¹ The genitive singular of all genders is **tōtius**, dative singular **tōtī**; otherwise **tōtus** is declined like **bonus**. Compare the declension of **hic**, **ille**, etc.

² Compare 171, 2, foot-note.

³ When a predicate adjective or participle agrees with two or more nouns of different genders, it is Masculine when the nouns denote persons, and Neuter when the nouns denote things.

⁴ *Were seen*. From **videō**, *to see*; the principal parts and the conjugation will be given later.

⁵ Agreeing with **legiōnibus**. Why is the noun plural when the adjectives are singular?

mountains and hills. 2. He strengthened the courage¹ of the soldiers by his² words.³ 3. Many men, clients of the Romans, hurried to him from the neighboring tribes and states and brought arms and hostages. 4. The leading men of the enemy were called together on that night; they were without a plan for the war. 5. Among them were many who once had been greatly praised by the Romans for their courage. 6. During the night the king of the Belgians with his attendants brought a large quantity of arms into camp. 7. The Romans and the Belgians fought in the plain between the hills for seven hours; the Belgians⁴ were driven⁵ into their camp.

180

READING EXERCISE

The Beginning of the Republic

Post rēgēs cōsulēs duo⁶ prō rēge ūnō⁷ creātī sunt,⁸ quibus annuum⁹ imperium¹⁰ cīvītātis datum est. Prīmō annō cōsulēs fuērunt Lūcius Iunius Brūtus, quī rēgem Tarquiniū expulerat,¹¹ et Tarquinius Collātīnus. Sed nōmen Tarquiniōrum populō Rōmānō nōn erat grātum; itaque cum coniuge, liberīs, servīsque omnia¹² bona¹³ ex urbe ad fīnitimōs portāvit, et in ēius locum Valerius Publicola cōsul est creātus. Sed iam ille Tarquinius, quī rēx fuerat, bellum contrā Rōmānōs parābat. In prīmō proeliō Brūtus cōsul occidit,¹⁴ quem Rōmānae mātērōnae¹⁵ per totum annum luxērunt.¹⁶ Posterō¹⁷ annō Tarquinius

¹ *animus*.² Omit.³ *verbum*, -ī.⁴ Translate by a pronoun.⁵ *Put to flight*.⁶ *Two*.⁷ *One*.⁸ *creō*, -āre, to elect.⁹ An adjective; compare *annus*.¹⁰ *Rule*.¹¹ *Had driven out*.¹² *All*.¹³ Neut. plur. used substantively, *goods*.¹⁴ *Fell*.¹⁵ What English word is derived from this?¹⁶ *Mourned*.¹⁷ *The next*.

cum Rōmānīs iterum¹ armīs dēcertāvit et Porsenna, rēx Etruscōrum, eī auxilium dedit. In hōc bellō Horātius sōlus² pontem servāvit, dum³ is ab Rōmānīs ruptus esset.⁴ Dēnique Porsenna pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcit⁵; Tarquinius post nōn multōs annōs in villā mortuus est.⁶

LESSON XXI

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

181

PARADIGMS

Audāx, *bold*.

audāci-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	audāx	audāx	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācis		audācium	
DAT.	audācī		audācibus	
ACCU.	audācem	audāx	audācīs, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audācī		audācibus	

Fortis, *brave*.

forti-

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis		fortium	
DAT.	fortī		fortibus	
ACCU.	fortem	forte	fortīs, -ēs	fortia
ABL.	fortī		fortibus	

¹ *Again*.⁴ Plup. subj. pass., *had been broken down*.² *Alone*.⁵ *Made*.³ *Until*.⁶ *Died*.

Ācer, *sharp, eager, spirited.*

ācri-

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(a) Notice that these adjectives are all declined like **ī** stems.¹

(b) Adjectives declined like **audāx**, which has but one form for all genders in the nominative singular, are called *Adjectives of One Termination*; those declined like **fortis**, **forte**, *Adjectives of Two Terminations*; and those declined like **ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, *Adjectives of Three Terminations*.

182

VOCABULARY

ācer , ācris , ācre , <i>sharp, eager, spirited.</i>	equester , equestris , equestre , <i>belonging to the cavalry,</i>
armō , -āre , <i>to arm</i> (arma , 111).	<i>equestrian</i> (equus , 80, eques , 169).
audāx , -ācis , <i>bold</i> (audācia , 151).	fortis , forte , <i>strong, brave.</i>
brevis , breve , <i>short.</i>	ita , <i>adv. so, thus, in this manner.</i>
dimicō , -āre , <i>to fight, contend</i> (compare pūgnō , 101).	iuventūs , -tūtis , <i>f. the period of youth, youth, young men.</i>

¹ Adjectives of one termination sometimes have the abl. sing. ending in **-e** instead of **-ī**, but this is not common in prose of the classical period.

Compare the declension of these adjectives with that of the nouns in 161 and 162.

omnis, omne, *all, whole.*pars, -tis, *f. part.*quartus, -a, -um, *fourth.*studium, -ī, *n. zeal, desire.*tempus, -oris, *n. time.*velox, -ōcis, *swift.*vulnus, -eris, *n. wound (vulnerō, 144).*

- 183 1. Omnēs Belgae, quī in tertiā parte Galliae habitābant, cum finitimīs gentibus et cīvitatibus brevī tempore coniūrābant. 2. Eō tempore hiemābat Caesar cum quartā legiōne in eā parte Galliae quae Ītaliae proxima est; dē Belgārum cōsiliō eī per epistulās nūntiātum est. 3. Caesar, ubi (*when*) brevī tempore cōpiam frūmentī comparāvit, finibus Belgārum adpropinquāvit. 4. Cum omnibus equitibus et novīs cohortibus iuventūtis, quās ex urbibus Ītaliae vocāverat, contrā hostis properābat; in itinere cōpiās Gallōrum equestri proeliō fugāvit. 5. Rēmī, quī ex Belgīs proximī Gallīs sunt, nōn longē aberant cum primīs cīvitatīs clientibusque eōrum; auxilium contrā inimicōs rogāvērunt. 6. Apud Belgās erat māgna inopia omnium; neque arma neque equōs neque cōpiam frūmentī habēbant. 7. Sed Germānī, quī audācēs fortēsque erant, iam multōs continuōs annōs cum Rōmānīs dīmīcāverant. 8. Ante proelium quod exspectābat Caesar, animōs mīlitum ita cōfirmāvit: “Vestra erit laus victōriae; sed hostibus vulnera et mors.” 9. Velōcēs ācrēsque erant Belgae quī longīs hastīs armātī erant; māgnō cum studiō bellī tōtam noctem dīmīcābant.

- 184 1. At that time Caesar’s lieutenant was in Gaul, and hostages were given him by all the tribes. 2. In the next winter the bold Gauls for many reasons prepared for¹ a new war against the Romans. 3. When² all the

¹ Prepare for, parō, -āre.

² Use ubi and the perfect indicative; compare sentence 3 above. Ubi means both where and when; it will be used in both senses in the following lessons.

arms had been brought from the town, Caesar hurried with the eager cavalry and the brave cohorts into the lands of the neighboring tribe. 4. These men were brave and bold, but owing to their fear of the Roman soldiers they were ready to fight neither at that time nor in that place. 5. Their cavalry forces were not great, but they had placed all their young men on a hill which was not far distant. 6. The Romans' horses, of which there was a great number in camp, were swift and spirited.

LESSON XXII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

185 ADJECTIVES are compared in three Degrees, as in English—the Positive, Comparative, and Superlative.

The Comparative is formed by adding *-ior* m. and f., *-ius* n., and the Superlative by adding *-issimus*, *-a*, *-um* to the stem of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus (alto-)	alt-ior	alt-issimus
fortis (forti-)	fort-ior	fort-issimus ¹
audāx (audāc-)	audāc-ior	audāc-issimus

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

186 Comparatives are declined as follows:

¹ Notice that the final vowel of the stem of the Positive, if it have any, as in **alto-**, **forti-**, is dropped before the endings **-ior**, **-issimus**.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.	fortiōris		fortiōrum	
DAT.	fortiōrī		fortiōribus	
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs ¹	fortiōra
ABL.	fortiōre ¹		fortiōribus	

(a) Compare this declension of the Comparative with that of the Positive of adjectives of the Third Declension, 181, and notice the points of difference carefully.

187 Superlatives are all declined like **bonus**, 62.

188 Compare: **cārus**, **clārus**, **brevis**, **trīstis**, **velōx**.

ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

189

EXAMPLES

1. **Marcus est clārior quam frāter.** *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
2. **Marcus est frātre clārior.** *Marcus is more famous than his brother.*
3. **Quid est bonō cīvī cārius quam patria?** *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*
4. **Quid est bonō cīvī patriā cārius?** *What is dearer to a good citizen than his native land?*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the person or thing with which the subject of each sentence is compared is either in the same case as the subject and connected by the conjunction **quam**, *than*, or is expressed by the simple Ablative. Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Comparison*.

¹ The endings **-ī** in the Ablative Singular and **-īs** in the Accusative Plural occur, but are rare.

(b) This Ablative can be used only when the first of the things compared is in the nominative or accusative; when the first of the two things compared is in any other case **quam** must be used: e. g., **cārior Horātiō quam servō est ille locus.** *That place is dearer to Horace than to his slave.*

- 190 **Rule.**—The Ablative of Comparison is used after the nominative or accusative of Comparatives.

W. 380, 381; B. 217; AG. 247; H. 471.

191

VOCABULARY

altus , -a, -um, <i>high, deep.</i>	māter , -tris, f. <i>mother.</i>
atrōx , -cis, <i>savage, frightful.</i>	mulier , -eris, f. <i>woman.</i>
certus , -a, -um, <i>certain, sure.</i>	pater , -tris, m. <i>father.</i>
dūrus , -a, -um, <i>hard, difficult.</i>	pēs , pedis, m. <i>foot.</i>
egēns , -ntis, <i>lacking, needy.</i>	quam , conj. <i>than.</i>
gravis , -e, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	timidus , -a, -um, <i>timid (timor,</i>
imperō , -āre, <i>to order.</i> ¹	158).
	tristis , -e, <i>sad.</i>
	tūtus , -a, -um, <i>safe.</i>

- 192 1. Belgae sunt fortiōrēs et audāciōrēs quam eī Gallī quī Rōmānīs finitimī sunt. 2. Nam cum Germānīs, quī nōn longē absunt, saepe dūrissimō tempore annī dīmicant. 3. Multīs dē causīs eā aestāte gravius et atrōcius bellum in hāc parte Galliae expectābātur. 4. Mōns ubi Caesar iuventūtem et equestrīs cōpiās conlocāvit, altior erat eō colle quem hostēs occupāverant. 5. Puerōs omnīs et mulierēs timidiōrēs in altīs silvīs occultāverant hostēs, ubi tūtiōrēs erant quam in arce. 6. Belgīs erat in animō² timidōs cōfirmāre, egentīs iuvāre, omnīs contrā

¹ With the dat. of person and the accu. of thing, *to order to furnish*: eīs obsidēs imperāvit. *He ordered them to furnish hostages.*

² esse in animō with the dative of possessor, *to have in mind, plan, intend.*

Rōmānōs incitāre, patriam liberāre. 7. Multī obsidēs in castrīs Caesaris et in Ītaliā erant, inter quōs erant frātrēs, filiī, filiaeque prīncipum cīvītātis. 8. Sed tertiā vigiliā noctis hostēs celeriter et māgnō cum studiō proelī moenibus adpropinquāvērunt; ibi diū pūgnātum est, sed vīctōria erat Rōmānīs certa. 9. Post id bellum ante pedēs Caesaris Belgae trīstissimī amīcitiam ēius et populi Rōmānī postulābant. 10. Iam hiems adpropinquābat; itaque Caesar eīs obsidēs, patrēs et mātērēs, imperāvit.

- 193 1. Of all the states of Gaul, this was the bravest and most eager for war. 2. The enemy had many horses which were swifter and more spirited than those belonging to¹ the Romans. 3. In the first watch of the night the Romans approached the town, the wall of which was very high. 4. But at daybreak the enemy were defeated in a hard battle with the cavalry² in a broad plain before the town. 5. The consul ordered the Gauls to furnish³ many hostages, among whom were the fathers and the sons of the leading men of the state. 6. Caesar intended⁴ to get ready a large number of ships in the winter and to carry his soldiers to Britain the following summer. 7. All the neighboring tribes of Britain hastened to the sea by the shortest road and prepared to fight with the Romans.

¹ *Belonging to* : translate by the possessive genitive.

² *With the cavalry* : translate by an adjective.

³ Compare 192, 10.

⁴ Compare 192, 6.

LESSON XXIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

- 194 ADJECTIVES ending in **-er** form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nominative of the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher	pulchr-ior	pulcher-rimus
ācer	ācr-ior	ācer-rimus

In the same way compare **miser**, **liber**.

- 195 Six adjectives in **-ilis** form the Superlative by adding **-limus** to the stem of the Positive less its final vowel:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis , <i>easy</i>	facil-ior	facil-limus
difficilis , <i>difficult</i>	difficil-ior	difficil-limus
similis , <i>like</i>	simil-ior	simil-limus
dissimilis , <i>unlike</i>	dissimil-ior	dissimil-limus
humilis , <i>low</i>	humil-ior	humil-limus
gracilis , <i>slender</i>	gracil-ior	gracil-limus

ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

196

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Paulō post adpropinquāvit cōsul. | <i>A little later the consul approached.</i> |
| 2. Haec via est multō difficilior. | <i>This way is much more difficult.</i> |
| 3. Illa turris decem pedibus est altior quam mūrus. | <i>That tower is ten feet higher than the wall.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the ablatives **paulō**, **multō**, **decem pedibus** answer the questions "*How much later, more difficult, higher?*" Such an Ablative is called the *Ablative of Degree of Difference*.

- 197 **Rule.**—The Ablative of Degree of Difference is used with Comparatives and words suggesting comparison.¹

W. 393; B. 223; AG. 250; H. 479.

198

VOCABULARY

beātus , -a, -um, <i>happy</i> .	multō , <i>much</i> . ²
celer , -eris, -ere, <i>swift</i> .	nēmō , nēminis , m. <i>no one</i> .
decem (indeclinable), <i>ten</i> .	nihil , n. (indeclin.), <i>nothing</i> .
difficilis , -e, <i>difficult</i> .	ōrdō , -inis, m. <i>order, rank</i> .
dissimilis , -e, <i>unlike</i> .	paulō , <i>little</i> . ²
facilis , -e, <i>easy</i> .	similis , -e, <i>like</i> .
humilis , -e, <i>low</i> .	vīgintī (indeclin.), <i>twenty</i> .
insignis , -e, <i>remarkable, prominent</i> .	

- 199 1. Eī Belgae, quī Germānīs³ sunt nōn dissimilēs, multō fortiōrēs sunt quam reliquī hūius nōminis. 2. Illī decem ante⁴ annīs superāverant cōsulem Rōmānum, quī per eōrum agrōs cum cōpiīs properābat. 3. Quā dē causā Caesar primā aestāte cum equitibus celerrimīs in eam partem Galliae properāverat. 4. Eō tempore nāvēs Rōmānōrum paulō altiōrēs erant quam eae quās Belgae habēbant, sed humiliōrēs quam eae quae nunc in nostrō marī sunt. 5. Multō facilius erat Belgīs, quōrum in finibus erant

¹ The most common words suggesting comparison are the adverbs **ante**, *before*, **post**, *afterward*, and the verb **mālō**, *to prefer* (487).

² **Multō** and **paulō** are originally the ablatives singular neuter of the adjectives **multus** and **paulus**; they are, however, generally called adverbs.

³ Dative.

⁴ **Ante** is here an adverb and has no influence on the ablative.

multae arborēs, nāvīs aedificāre. 6. Insignī studiō omnium ōrdinum per vīgintī diēs¹ continuōs Belgae labōrābant; multās navīs celeriorēs altiōrēsque aedificāvērunt. 7. Similī studiō cum militibus nostrīs diū pūgnāvērunt, sed septimā hōrā ad ripās sunt fugātī. 8. Nihil hominī fortī bōnōque pulchrius est quam prō patriā morī;² nēmō beātiōr est quam is quī coniugis et liberōrum causā fortiter dīmicat. 9. Pōns, quem trāns flūmen aedificāvit Caesar, lātiōr septem pedibus erat quam via. 10. Quies longa fuerat eā nocte in oppidō Belgārum, sed paulō ante lūcem magnō cum clāmōre ad castra Rōmānōrum propēravērunt hostēs.

- 200** 1. For many reasons Caesar prepared to hurry into Gaul by a more difficult way. 2. The tribe, whose territory he was approaching, was much braver than the rest of the Gauls. 3. Their horses were much swifter and more spirited than those of the Romans. 4. These tribes were most like the Germans,³ who lived across the very wide river. 5. Caesar took possession of all their towns and stationed the bravest troops on the neighboring hills. 6. A little while after, the enemy approached with all their forces, but were defeated and put to flight in a severe cavalry battle. 7. The Gauls' ships were very unlike⁴ the Romans'; the former were shorter and broader, the latter longer and higher.

¹ Accu. plur. of *diēs*, *day*.

² Infinitive, *to die*.

³ Compare 199, 1.

⁴ *Very unlike*, superlative.

LESSON XXIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

- 201 THE following adjectives are irregular in Comparison, the Comparative and Superlative being formed from different stems than the Positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

- 202 Plūs is defective in declension:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	_____	plūris	plūrium	
DAT.	_____	_____	plūribus	
ACCU.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	_____	plūre	plūribus	

- 203 The following have no Positive:

POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare prae , <i>before</i>)	prior , <i>former</i>	primus , <i>first</i>
“ citrā , <i>this side of</i>)	citerior , <i>hither</i>	citimus , <i>hithermost</i>
“ ultrā , <i>beyond</i>)	ulterior , <i>farther</i>	ultimus , <i>farthest, last</i>
“ in , intrā , <i>in, within</i>)	interior , <i>inner</i>	intimus , <i>inmost</i>
“ prope , <i>near</i>)	propior , <i>nearer</i>	proximus , <i>nearest, next</i>

204 The Positive of the following is rare:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(posterī) ¹	posterior, <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus, <i>latest, last</i> postumus, <i>late-born</i>
(exterī)	exterior, <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus } extimus, } <i>outermost</i>
(īferī)	inferior, <i>lower</i>	{ infimus } īmus, } <i>lowest</i>
(superī)	superior, <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus, <i>last</i> summus, <i>highest</i>

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

205

EXAMPLES

1. Amicōs cūrā liberāvit. *He freed his friends from care.*
2. Oppidānōs armīs privābunt. *They will deprive the townsmen of their arms.*
3. Locus militibus vacuus erat. *The place was free of soldiers.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablatives **cūrā**, **armīs**, **militibus** express that from which one is separated or that which he is without. Such an Ablative is called an *Ablative of Separation*.

206 **Rule.**—The Ablative of Separation is used with verbs and adjectives meaning to relieve, deprive, need, lack, etc.

W. 374-377; B. 214; AG. 243; H. 461-465.

(a) Verbs of freeing, depriving, lacking, and removing are ordinarily used with the simple ablative, unless

¹ The positive of these adjectives is rare save **posterus** in such phrases as **posterō diē**, *on the next day*; **posterō annō**, *in the next year*. The plurals **posterī**, *descendants*, **īferī**, *the inhabitants of the lower world, the dead*, **superī**, *the gods above*, are also fairly common.

a person is meant; then the ablative with a preposition is used: e. g., *civitatem ā rēge liberat*.

(b) Verbs compounded with the prefixes *ab-*, *dis-*, *sē-* usually have the ablative with a preposition: e. g., *Rōma longē abest ab hōc locō*, *Rome is far distant from this place*; *Britannī differunt ā Gallīs*, *The Britons differ from the Gauls*.

207

VOCABULARY¹

<i>altitūdō</i> , -inis, f. <i>height</i> .	<i>spoliō</i> , -āre, to <i>despoil of</i> .
<i>levis</i> , -e, <i>light, slight</i> .	<i>vacuus</i> , -a, -um, <i>empty of</i> ,
<i>privō</i> , -āre, to <i>deprive of</i> .	<i>free from</i> .
<i>secundus</i> , -a, -um, <i>favorable</i> ,	<i>vēr</i> , <i>vēris</i> , n. <i>spring</i> .

following.

208

1. Tōtam eam hiemem Caesar in citeriōre Galliā omnibus cum cōpiīs hiemābat. 2. Paulō ante primum vēr cum decem cohortibus et multīs equestribus cōpiīs in ulteriōrem Galliam properāvit et in eās civitātēs quae marī propiōrēs erant. 3. Itinera difficillima erant dūrissimō tempore annī et altitūdine montium quae inter Galliam et Italiam sunt. 4. Caesar cum septem cohortibus omnia superiōra loca occupāvit, sed equitēs nōn longē ab infimō monte² conlocāvit. 5. Clientēs civium Rōmānōrum et omnis quī nātūrā timidiōrēs erant armīs privābant hostēs. 6. Posterō diē³ levī et secundō proeliō equestri in campō dimicātum est. 7. Hōc proeliō et eō quod posterō diē pūgnātum est, Caesar civīs Rōmānōs et sociōs māximō periculō et timōre liberāvit. 8. Hī Gallī multō ācriōrēs erant quam eī quōs Caesar priōre aestāte similī caede

¹ From this point the new words used in paradigms are ordinarily not repeated in the vocabularies, as has been done hitherto. Pupils should therefore carefully learn the meaning of each new paradigm.

² *Infimus mōns*, the *foot of the mountain*; *summus mōns*, the *top of the mountain*.

³ Ablative sing. of *diēs*, *day*.

superāverat. 9. Nam in extrēmīs fīnibus Gallōrum habitābant et longē aberant ā Germānis, quī timōre vacuī erant. 10. Eī quī superātī erant armīs spoliābantur et in agrīs victōrum labōrābant.

- 209 1. At the beginning of spring¹ Caesar prepared to carry his troops from farther Gaul into Britain by means of ships. 2. In the previous summer he had put to flight a tribe of the Britons and had deprived them of their arms. 3. He stationed ten cohorts in those parts which were nearer the sea,² and a little after the third watch hastened toward the enemy. 4. The enemy's spears were a foot longer than those of the Romans', but their shields were a little smaller than the Romans'. 5. The enemy were overcome in a slight cavalry battle and were driven in flight³ into a neighboring wood. 6. The inner part of Britain was inhabited by very savage tribes, who were free from all fear. 7. But the hither part was inhabited by those who had taken possession of the country for the sake of war and plunder.

LESSON XXV

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

- 210 Most adverbs are derived from adjective stems :

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
longus (longo-)	longē, far (132)
miser (misero-)	miserē, wretchedly

¹ Compare sentence 2 above.

² Use dative.

³ fugō.

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the First and Second Declensions by changing the final vowel of the stem -o to -ē.

211

ADJECTIVES	ADVERBS
ācer (ācri-)	ācriter, <i>sharply</i>
audāx (audāc-)	audacter, <i>boldly</i>
fortis (forti-)	fortiter, <i>bravely</i>
sapiēns (sapiēnt-)	sapienter, <i>wisely</i>

(a) Notice that these Adverbs are formed from stems of Adjectives of the Third Declension by the addition of -ter; if the adjective stem end in -nt, the -t is dropped.

212 Accusative or Ablative neuters singular of Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: e. g., multum, *much*; facile, *easily*; tūtō, *safely*; subitō, *suddenly*; multō, (*by*) *much*; paulō, (*by*) *little*.

213 Adverbs follow the Comparison of the Adjectives from which they are derived:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longē	long-ius	long-issimē
miserē	miser-ius	miser-rimē
ācriter	ācr-ius	ācer-rimē
audacter	audāc-ius	audāc-issimē
fortiter	fort-ius	fort-issimē
sapienter	sapient-ius	sapient-issimē
facile	facil-ius	facil-limē
tūtō	tūt-ius	tūt-issimē

(a) Notice that the Comparative of the Adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the Adjective, and that the Superlative is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective in the same way as the Positive of the Adverb from the Positive of the Adjective.

- 214 The following common Adverbs are irregular in Comparison :

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>ill</i>	pēius	pessimē
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parum , (<i>too</i>) <i>little</i>	minus	minimē
diū , <i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
saepe , <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
	magis , ¹ <i>more</i>	māximē

- 215 Form and compare adverbs from **laetus**, *glad*; **levis**, *light*; **atrōx**, *savage, cruel*.

216 VOCABULARY

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province*. **postea**, adv. *afterward*.
impedimentum, -ī, n. *hindrance*; plur. *baggage*. **fēliciter**, *happily, with good fortune*.
adsum, -esse, -fuī, *to be present* (75).

- 217 1. Subitō primō vēre aderat ex ultimā parte prōvinciae ille lēgātus, quī dē atrōciōre bellō nūntiāvit. 2. Bene et fēliciter ā militibus nostrīs priōre aestāte decem continuās hōrās dīmīcātum erat contrā rēgem Belgārum. 3. Ācerrimē coniugum liberōrumque causā eō tempore Gallī pugnāverant et nēmō audācius quam rēx ille. 4. Hōc vēre Caesar cum multīs legiōnibus nōn longē aberat. Itaque et facilius et celerius quam priōre aestāte militēs ad impedimenta properābant. 5. Ibi cōsul egentīs cūrābat, eōs quī armīs spoliātī erant laetē armāvit, et postea pontem fēcit² paulō altiōrem et septem pedibus longiōrem quam priōrem. 6. Summōs³ collis et loca magis idōnea

¹ Some adjectives and adverbs are compared with **magis**, **māximē**: e. g., **idōneus**, **magis idōneus**, **māximē idōneus**.

² Perf. indic. of **faciō**, *to make*.

³ Compare 208, 4.

sapienter occupāvit et posterā nocte cum primīs hostium ordinibus audācter pūgnāre parāvit. 7. Equī eōrum multō velōciōrēs ācriōrēsque erant quam nostrī et laetē hostibus adpropinquābant. 8. Inter omnīs eās gentēs māxima laus est hostīs armīs spoliāre; quae posteā deīs deābusque laetissimē dant. 9. Proximīs annīs Caesar fēliciter māximam partem Galliae pācāverat; quīntō annō milītēs in Britanniam nāvibus tūtō portāvit. 10. Britannī quī ad mare subitō properāverant, ācritē ab milītibus Rōmānīs fugātī sunt.

- 218** 1. In former years the Gauls had fought more bravely than the Germans. 2. But at this time the Germans were much more savage than the Gauls and fought more boldly. 3. When Caesar came near, the Germans quickly concealed their women and children in the neighboring forest. 4. This forest was very large, and it was not easy to march¹ through it very quickly. 5. Caesar stationed his forces not far from the forest and waited for the enemy seven nights. 6. At the farther end of the bridge there were towers many feet higher than the enemy's towers. 7. But the highest towers were on the top of the hill; here Caesar wisely stationed seven cohorts of his best troops. 8. The horsemen of the Germans approached very quickly, but because of the height of the walls, they did not capture the town.

219

READING EXERCISE

Wars with the Gauls

Ubi Gallī, gēns nātūrā atrōx, quī moenibus urbis adpropinquābant, Rōmānōs ad Alliam flūmen māgnā caede superāvērunt—quae clādēs semper erat Rōmānīs trīstissima—, Rōmam etiam occupāvērunt. Nulla² erant

¹ *To march, iter facere.*

² *nūllus, -a, -um, none, no.* Declined like *tōtus*, 177.

praesidia; nihil potuērunt¹ cīvēs. Cum iuventūte, cūius numerus nōn erat māgnus, dūx Manlius arcem dēfendit.² Ubi praesidium in summā fame³ fuit et Manlius pācem ā Gallīs māximīs praemiīs emere⁴ voluit,⁵ subitō Camillus hostīs atrōcī proeliō superāvit.

Post multōs annōs Gallī iterum ad urbem accesserant⁶ et quartō milliāriō⁷ trāns Aniēnem⁸ flūmen castra posuērunt.⁹ Contrā eōs properābat Titus Quīnctius. Ibi Gallus māgnō corpore fortissimum Rōmānōrum ad certāmen¹⁰ singulāre¹¹ provocāvit.¹² Manlius cum barbarō statim dēcertāvit, eum facile occidit¹³ spoliāvitque torque¹⁴ aureō.¹⁵ Quā dē causā et Manlius et omnēs posterī Torquātī appellātī sunt. Iterum in Pomptīnō agrō¹⁶ Valerius in similī pūgnā sacrā ālite¹⁷ corvō¹⁸ adiūtus¹⁹ spolia²⁰ cēpit;²¹ itaque hīc quoque est Corvinus appellātus. Post aliquot²² annōs in Etruriā reliquōs Gallōs imperātor Rōmānus dēlēvit;²³ ex eā gente quae Rōmam incenderat,²⁴ nēmō effūgit.²⁵

¹ *Could (do).*

² *Defended.*

³ *famēs, -is, f. hunger, famine.*

⁴ *To buy.*

⁵ *Wished.*

⁶ *Had approached.*

⁷ *Mile-stone.*

⁸ *Aniō, -ēnis, m. a stream emptying into the Tiber a few miles north of Rome.*

⁹ *Pitched.*

¹⁰ *Combat.*

¹¹ *singulāris, -e, single.*

¹² *Challenged.*

¹³ *Killed.*

¹⁴ *torquis, -is, m. necklace.*

¹⁵ *Golden.*

¹⁶ *Pomptīnus ager, a district in Latium.*

¹⁷ *āles, -itis, f. bird.*

¹⁸ *corvus, -ī, m. raven.*

¹⁹ *Perf. pass. partic. (adiuvō), aided.*

²⁰ *Spoils, compare spoliō.*

²¹ *Gained.*

²² *Some.*

²³ *Destroyed.*

²⁴ *Had burned.*

²⁵ *Escaped.*

LESSON XXVI

FOURTH OR -ŭ DECLENSION

Stem in u

PARADIGMS

220

Manus, f. *hand*.**Cornū**, n. *horn*.

manu-

cornu-

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	man us	cornū
GEN.	man ūs	corn ūs
DAT.	man uī , - ū	cornū
ACCU.	man um	cornū
ABL.	manū	cornū

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	man ūs	cornua
GEN.	man uum	corn uum
DAT.	man ibus	corn ibus
ACCU.	man ūs	cornua
ABL.	man ibus	corn ibus

(a) A few nouns, of which **portus**, *harbor*, is the most common, have -**ubus** or -**ibus** in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

- 221 The Gender of most nouns of the Fourth Declension ending in -**us** is Masculine. A few, of which **domus**,¹ *house*, and **manus**, *hand*, are the most common, are Feminine. All ending in -**ū** are neuter.

¹ **Domus** has besides the regular forms of the Fourth Declension the following forms of the Second: Dat. and Abl. Sing. **domō**; Gen. Plur. **domōrum**; Accu. Plur. **domōs**.

FIFTH OR -ē DECLENSION

Stem in ē

222

PARADIGMS

Diēs, m. *day*.
diē-

Rēs, f. *thing*.
rē-

SINGULAR

NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diēī	reī
DAT.	diēī	reī
ACCU.	diem	rem
ABL.	diē	rē

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACCU.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

(a) Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout. Other nouns, if used at all in the plural, are found only in the nominative and accusative.

(b) Notice that the genitive and dative singular have the ending **-ēī** when the stem vowel is preceded by a consonant, but when a vowel precedes, the ending is **-ēī**.

223 The Gender of nouns of the Fifth Declension is Feminine with the exception of **dies**, *day*, which is usually masculine.

224

VOCABULARY

aciēs, **-ēī**, f. *line* (of battle). **cornū**, **-ūs**, n. *horn*, *wing*
agmen, **-inis**, n. *line* (of (of an army).
 march). **dexter**, **-tra**, **-trum**, *right*.

equitātus , -ūs, m. <i>cavalry</i> .	rēs , rei, f. <i>thing, fact</i> .
exercitus , -ūs, m. <i>army</i> .	senex , senis , ¹ m. <i>old man</i> .
manus , -ūs, f. <i>hand, band</i> (of soldiers).	sinister , -tra, -trum, <i>left</i> .
necō , -āre, <i>to kill</i> .	tribūnus , -ī, m. <i>tribune</i> (a military officer).

225 1. Posterō diē Caesar omnia superiōra loca subitō occupāvit et manūs hostium fugāvit. 2. Secundā hōrā diēi ācriter inter equitātum Caesaris et hostium in flūmine pūgnātum est. 3. Iam vulnera Gallōrum et multa et gravia erant; sed princeps eōrum senex tribūnum nostrum necāvit et corpus armīs spoliāvit. 4. Hōc diē in dexterā rīpā flūminis erant multa corpora hominum quae armīs spoliāta erant. 5. Dum (*while*) impedimenta in proximum collem portantur,² subitō exercitus Gallōrum aderat et agmen Rōmānum oppūgnāvit. 6. In sinistrō cornū hostium erat pater rēgis, insīgnis senex, quī equum in nostrōs ācriter incitāvit. 7. Primā lūce aciēs hostium in campō ante castra aderat; ad multam noctem ācriter dīmīcāvērunt hostēs, nam Gallī nōn minus fortēs quam nostrī erant. 8. Atrōx erat illa caedēs Gallōrum, quī contrā sinistrum cornū fortiter pūgnāverant, sed septimā hōrā in flūmen ā nostrīs fugātī sunt. 9. Multō dūriōrēs sunt hiemēs in eīs partibus quam in Italiā, diēs breviōrēs, noctēs longiōrēs; quā dē causā itinera nostra erant multō difficiliōra.

226 1. The enemy's army is much larger than Caesar's. 2. Across this river, not far from the mountain, is a large band of Gauls. 3. On the next day the enemy suddenly and boldly attacked the Roman army on the march with all their forces. 4. On the left wing of the enemy's line

¹ Declined in full: **senex**, **senis**, **senī**, **senem**, **sene**; **senēs**, **senum**, **senibus**, etc.

² Translate as if imperfect.

of battle were the Gallic cavalry. 5. The leader of the Gauls had in his right hand a sword, in his left a shield. 6. The Gauls fought long and fiercely at the foot of the mountain for seven consecutive hours and a large part of the chief men were killed. 7. This fact was announced to the tribes of farther Gaul by fires and by shouting. 8. Within seven days the tribune got together¹ a large band of new soldiers.

LESSON XXVII

SECOND or ē CONJUGATION

227 LEARN the Indicative and the present Infinitive of **habeō**, active and passive (480).

(a) Compare the conjugation of **habeō** carefully with that of **amō** (479). Observe that the only difference is in the stem vowels.

(b) Conjugate **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus**, *to hold*.

228 1. **Habēs**, **habēbimus**, **habitus est**. 2. **Tenuimus**, **tenuerit**, **tenēbātis**. 3. **Teneor**, **habuit**, **habēberis**. 4. **Habuerat**, **habita erant**, **tenēbar**. 5. **Tenēbis**, **habuērunt**, **habēre**. 6. **Tenērī**, **habētis**, **tenuistī**.

1. You have, we shall hold, we had had. 2. I have held, you will have, you will have had. 3. It is held, we were held, they had. 4. To be held, to have, to hold. 5. We have had, you were having, you had held.

¹ **parō**, **āre**,

229

VOCABULARY

aedificium, -i, n. <i>building, house</i> (aedificō, 101).	maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mānsurus, ¹ <i>to remain.</i>
aqua, -ae, f. <i>water.</i>	natiō, -ōnis, f. <i>nation.</i>
caelum, -i, n. <i>heaven, sky.</i>	nūntius, -i, m. <i>messenger</i> (nūntiō, 126).
captivus, -i, m. <i>captive.</i>	regiō, -ōnis, f. <i>region, direction.</i>
contineō (cum + teneō), -ēre, -uī, -tentus, <i>to hold back, to keep in check.</i>	Rhēnus, -i, m. <i>the Rhine.</i>
hiberna, -ōrum, n. <i>winter quarters.</i>	sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus (sub + teneō), <i>to sustain, withstand.</i>
imperātor, -ōris, m. <i>commander</i> (imperō, 192).	ventus, i, m. <i>wind.</i>
imperium, -i, n. <i>command, rule.</i>	videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsus, <i>to see</i> (in the passive, <i>to be seen or to seem</i>).
impetus, -ūs, m. <i>onset, attack.</i>	

- 230 1. Iī quī superiōribus temporibus illās regiōnēs tenēbant, corpora maiōra habēbant. 2. Ubi primō vĕre Rōmānae legiōnes ex prōvinciā flūminī Rhēnō adpropinquāvērunt, multa animālia vidēbantur cum māgnīs capitibus et cornibus. 3. Mulierēs et senēs eārum exterārum natiōnum labōrem māximum facile semper sustinēre vidēbantur; nunc audācter in proximā rīpā flūminis ad impedimenta manēbant. 4. Inter captivōs in hibernis imperātōris fuerant obsidēs, māter et pater illius rēgis, quī prō amīcō populī Rōmānī erat habitus. 5. Ā rēge vĕlōx nūntius subitō aderat, quī haec dē cōsiliō eiūs nūntiavit: "Hōc locō impetum cōsulis sustinēbit et prō summō imperiō dēcertābit." 6. Tertiō diē imperātor cum māgnō exercitū oppidum bene et fēliciter expūgnāvit; haec rēs hostibus celeriter nūntiāta est. 7. Validus erat ventus quī noctem

¹ As the perfect passive participle of **maneō** is not in use, the future active participle is given. This will be done with all intransitive verbs.

et diem hīs regiōnibus flābat¹ et aqua dē caelō erat multa; itaque imperātor milītēs in castrīs et oppidō continēbat. 8. In oppidīs erat neque frūmentum neque argentum, et incolae, egentēs et tristēs, miserē in parvīs aedificiīs habitābant. 9. Extrēmā aestāte faciliōre et breviōre itinere in ulteriōrem prōvinciae partem imperātor properāvit.

- 231** 1. In the most ancient times the Roman armies were much smaller. 2. For many years the power was held by kings who kept the neighboring peoples in check by their foot-soldiers and cavalry. 3. The Romans often fought boldly and successfully with their neighbors and sustained many attacks. 4. The districts which they seized were regarded as² Roman land,³ and the nations whom they subdued as slaves. 5. But the Romans did not always deprive of their⁴ lands those whom they had overcome with their arms. 6. In those districts where the winter-quarters of the cavalry were, there was much rain,⁵ but at the opening of spring⁶ the general hurried with all the army into hither Gaul. 7. At daybreak the enemy prepared to withstand our attack. 8. Their line of battle was very long: on the right wing was their bravest cavalry; on their left also many horsemen were seen.

¹ flō, -āre, to blow.

² Compare 230, 4.

³ ager.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ Compare 230, 7.

⁶ Compare 230, 2.

LESSON XXVIII

THE GENITIVE AND THE ABLATIVE
OF QUALITY

232

EXAMPLES

1. Imperātor bonō animō *The general was of good
erat. courage.*
2. Erat flūmen altīs ripīs *There was a river with high
inter Rōmānōs et hos- banks between the Romans
tis. and the enemy.*
3. Hic vir erat fortis et *This man was brave and
māgnae auctōritātis. very influential.*

(a) Notice that the phrases **bonō animō**, **altīs ripīs**, **māgnae auctōritātis**, all express some Quality or Characteristic of the noun with which they are connected. They are therefore adjective expressions, so that in the third sentence the genitive is parallel to the adjective **fortis**.

(b) Notice also that in each sentence the ablative or genitive is modified by an adjective.

- 233 **Rule.**—Quality may be expressed by the Genitive, but only when the Genitive is modified by an Adjective.¹

W. 354; B. 203; AG. 215; H. 440, 3.

- 234 **Rule.**—Quality may also be expressed by the Ablative, but only when the Ablative is modified by an Adjective.²

W. 394; B. 224; AG. 251; H. 473, 2.

¹ That is, we may say **vir summae virtūtis**, *a man of the greatest courage*; but we may not say **vir virtūtis**, but **fortis vir**.

² There is often no distinction between the genitive and ablative, but for expressions of time, space, number, and measure, the genitive is used, e. g., **mūrus decem pedum**; while for parts of the body and external qualities the ablative is employed, e. g., **puer magnīs pedibus**, and sentence 2 above.

235

VOCABULARY

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus (ad +iuvō, 132), <i>to help, assist.</i>	Graecus, -a, -um, <i>Greek, Grecian.</i>
Asia, -ae, f. <i>Asia.</i>	iuvenis, -is, m. <i>a youth (iuventus, 182).</i>
Athēniēnsis, -e, <i>Athenian.</i>	Miltiadēs, -is, m. <i>Miltiades.</i>
auctōritās, -ātis, f. <i>authority, influence.</i>	necessārius, -a, -um, <i>necessary, needful.</i>
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, <i>to increase.</i>	paucī, -ae, -a, <i>few.</i>
barbarus, -a, -um, <i>barbarous, foreign.</i>	Persicus, -a, -um, <i>Persian.</i>
Chersonēsus, -ī, f. <i>the Chersonesus.</i> ¹	saepe, <i>often.</i>
Eurōpa, -ae, f. <i>Europe.</i>	suus, -a, -um, <i>his (her, its, their) own.</i>
fortitūdō, -inis, f. <i>bravery</i>	timeō, -ēre, -uī, <i>to fear.</i>
	(fortis, 181, fortiter, 111).

236

1. Erat ōlim inter Athēniēnsīs iuvenis summae fortitūdinis et māgnō corpore, cui nōmen erat Miltiadī. 2. Ille imperātor cum māgnā manū et nāvibus multīs impetum barbarōrum in Chersonēsō fēliciter sustinēbat. 3. Hī barbarī hominēs vidēbantur māgnā virtūte esse māgnūque amōrem patriae habēre. 4. Paucīs diēbus omnem illam regiōnem imperātor occupāverat et incolās armīs privāverat; iam bonōs armābat et rēbus necessāriīs adiuvābat, omnia māgnā cūrā administrābat. 5. Ibi cum exercitū multōs annōs manēbat et erat inter eās natiōnes māgnae auctōritātis. 6. Postea patriam suam cōnsiliō et virtūte saepe adiuvābat et augēbat. 7. Ab hostibus Atheniēnsium semper timēbatur, ab amīcīs suīs et eōrum māgnoperē amābatur. 8. Māximē eius auctōritāte et cōnsiliō adiūtī sunt Atheniēnsēs in Persicō bellō, quō tempore Miltiadēs illum Persicum rēgem superāvit. 9. Nēmō eā victōriā clārior apud Graecōs erat quam Miltiadēs,

¹ A peninsula of Thrace on the northwest of the Hellespont.

nēmō māiōris auctōritātis; itaque Atheniēnsēs eī multās nāvīs dedērunt. 10. His nāvibus paucās urbēs, quae barbarōs cōpiīs iūverant, expūgnāvit. Sed postea timuit cōpiās rēgis et Athēnās¹ properāvit.

- 237** 1. The general is a person of great influence; within ten days he will have an army of seven legions. 2. He has increased his forces, which are already many more than in the former war. 3. They have undergone² much labor and are ready to remain the entire winter far from their native country. 4. They have built a seven-foot wall and will gladly fight by reason of their lack of all things needful. 5. The inhabitants of those regions are men of great courage and boldness. 6. The trees are higher than those which we see in our part of Europe, but the houses are very low. 7. The old men are of greater authority, but the young men are feared by the enemy. 8. On the march in Germany they often saw animals with large horns but small bodies.

LESSON XXIX

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

- 238** LEARN the Present System, active and passive, of the Subjunctive of *sum* (485), *amō* (479), and *habeō* (480).

¹ *To Athens.* With names of towns the accusative alone expresses the limit of motion, 425.

² *sustineō.*

(a) Notice carefully the following facts:

(1) That the personal endings of the Subjunctive are the same as those of the Indicative.

(2) But that in the present tense the stem **amā-** of the First Conjugation is changed to **amē-**, and that the stem **habē-** of the Second Conjugation becomes **habea-**.

(3) And that the tense sign of the Imperfect is **-re-**. Compare the tense sign of the Imperfect Indicative.

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

239

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Hunc laudēmus. | <i>Let us praise this man.</i> |
| 2. Hodiē nē pūgnēmus. | <i>Let us not fight to-day.</i> |
| 3. Haec dōna habeat. | <i>Let him have these gifts.</i> |
| 4. Nē haec dōna habeat. | <i>Let him not have these gifts.</i> |

(a) Notice that the Subjunctives in these sentences express the Will of the speaker that something shall or shall not be done. This subjunctive that expresses the will is called the *Volitive Subjunctive* (**volō**, to will). In the third person it is sometimes called also the *Jussive Subjunctive*¹ (**iubeō**, to order).

240 **Rule.**—The Volitive Subjunctive states the action as willed.

W. 481–482; B. 273–275; AG. 266; H. 559.

241

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Haec habeāmus. | <i>May we have this.</i> |
| 2. Nē haec habeat. | <i>May he not have this.</i> |

¹ It should be observed that only the First and Third persons of the Present Subjunctive are ordinarily used in this construction. If we wish to translate into Latin "Praise him," we usually use the imperative, **hunc laudā**, 355; for the negative addressed to the second person, "Do not praise him," the Latin employs a circumlocution which will be given later (356).

3. **Utinam fortis esset.** *Would that he were brave.*
 4. **Utinam nē hostēs essent.** *Would that they were not enemies.*

(a) Notice that here the subjunctives express the Wish or Desire of the speaker that something may or may not be done. This subjunctive is called the *Optative Subjunctive* (**optō**, *to wish, desire*). Compare with the Volitive Subjunctive.

(b) Notice also that the Present tense refers to Future, the Imperfect to Present time.

(c) In the Optative Subjunctive all three persons may be used. Compare the Volitive Subjunctive.

(d) **Utinam** is often used with the Present, regularly with the Imperfect, of the Optative Subjunctive.

242 *Rule.*—The Optative Subjunctive states the action as a wish or desire.

W. 484; B. 279; AG. 267; H. 558.

243 1. Haec laudēmus; frātre[m] suum laudet. 2. Haec habeāmus; nē pūgnent. 3. Utinam fortēs essētis; utinam laudārentur. 4. Dūcem laudētis; utinam nē pūgnārētis. 5. Nē haec habeat; bonī sīmus.

244 1. Let them be slaves; may they be free. 2. Would that you were being praised; let us praise them. 3. Would that we were not fighting against them; let him have the books. 4. May we have the gifts; let us not be slaves.

245 VOCABULARY

fidēs , -eī, f. <i>faith, pledge</i> .	memoria , -ae, f. <i>memory</i> .
hodiē (hōc + diē), adv. <i>to-day</i> .	moveō , -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, <i>to move</i> ; sīgna mōvēre, <i>to advance</i> ; castra mōvēre, <i>to break camp</i> .
māiōres , -um, m. <i>elders, forefathers</i> .	

nē, adv. and conj. *not*.

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus (**prō** + **habeō**), *to hinder, prevent, keep from*.

rēs pūblica, **reī pūblīcae**,¹ f. *state*.

sī, conj. *if*.

sīgnum, -ī, n. *signal, standard*.

spēs, -eī, f. *hope*.

tamen, adv. *still, nevertheless*.

tēlum, -ī, n. *weapon, spear, javelin*. (Compare **hasta**, **arma**, 111.)

tum, adv. *then, at that time*.

utinam, adv., used with optative subjunctive.

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty*.

- 246 1. Nōn sine spē, mīlitēs, sīmus; nē hodiē castra moveāmus. 2. Vidēmus, iuvenēs, aciem equitātumque hostium; nē timeāmus impetum eōrum. 3. Sed sī fortissimē cum eīs pūgnābimus, clāra vīctōria nostra erit. Prohibeāmus hostīs ab aquā et ā rēbus necessāriīs. 4. Ubi sīgnum ab imperātōre dabitur, sīgna moveāmus et castra quam² celerrimē oppūgnēmus. 5. Bona spēs vīctōriae nostrīs mīlitibus est. Sī eōs fugābimus, nostra auctōritās apud omnīs nātiōnēs māxima erit. 6. Senēs et mulierēs omnēs cum suis impedimentīs in castra properent quae nōn longē ab hāc ripā absunt. Difficillimīs ripīs est hōc flūmen; itaque barbarī castrīs vix adpropinquābunt. 7. Utinam hodiē eum animum habērēmus quem māiōrēs nostrī paucīs ante annīs nōn longē ab hīs locīs habuērunt. 8. Semper, cīvēs, memoriā teneātis ea quae māiōrēs vestrī prō rē pūblicā fēcērunt.³ 9. Utinam nē impetum Gallōrum timērētis. Sī māiōra corpora et longiōra tēla habent, nōn fortiōrēs sunt. 10. Sī virtūtem, fidem, fortitudinemque māiōrum memoriā tenēbitis, audācius impetum hostium sustinēbitis.

¹ Each part is declined separately: Dat. **reī pūblīcae**: Acc. **rem pūblīcam**, etc.

² **quam** with the superlative of adjectives and adverbs means *as possible*.

³ Perf. indic. of **faciō**, *to do*.

- 247 1. Would that you remembered to-day all the things which our ancestors did¹ for our native land. 2. They freed their state from the fear of the barbarians, who had come against it with a great force. 3. The leader who held the command was a man of great foresight.² Would that he were present to-day. 4. Let us not remain longer in this place, but break camp to-day and hurry into the neighboring mountains. 5. The enemy's commander is a man of the greatest bravery and influence; still our men have good hope of victory. 6. If we shall keep the enemy away from our supplies, our allies will soon aid us. 7. May we soon advance a long distance from this camp; then we shall not be kept from water and supplies. 8. May Caesar's influence increase the bravery of his own auxiliary troops.

LESSON XXX

SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT SENTENCES

PURPOSE CLAUSES

248

EXAMPLES

1. Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) *They are fighting (have fought) to be free.*
ut liberī sint.
2. Pūgnant (pūgnāvērunt) *They are fighting (have fought) that they may not be slaves.*
nē servī sint.

¹ 246, 8.

² cōnsilium.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. Pūgnābunt ut liberī sint. | <i>They will fight to be free.</i> |
| 4. Pūgnābunt nē servī sint. | <i>They will fight that they may not be slaves.</i> |
| 5. Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt)
ut liberī essent. | <i>They were fighting (fought)
to be free.</i> |
| 6. Pūgnābant (pūgnāvērunt)
nē servī essent. | <i>They were fighting (fought)
that they might not be
slaves.</i> |

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Purpose of the leading verb; also that the conjunction **ut** introduces positive clauses, **nē** negative.

(b) Notice further that when the point of view of the leading verb is Present¹ or Future, the Present Subjunctive² follows; when the point of view is Past,³ the Imperfect Subjunctive is used in the dependent clause.

(c) In a dependent clause the subjunctive is said to follow the tense of the principal verb, which fixes the point of view. This relation is called the *Sequence of Tenses*.

249 Rule.—The Subjunctive is used with *ut, that, nē, that not*, to express Purpose.

W. 506; B. 282; AG. 317; H. 568.

¹ The point of view of the definite perfect, in English, *I have fought*, is the same as that of the present tense; but that of the indefinite, in English, *I fought*, is past like the imperfect.

² The student should remember that the present subjunctive in independent sentences (239, 241) may express future time, so that its use in clauses depending on a future verb is natural. As it also may have a present meaning, it does double duty.

³ I. e., imperfect or indefinite perfect.

EXAMPLES

1. **Nostri tam fortiter pugnabant (pugnāvērunt) ut hostis fugent.** *Our soldiers are fighting (have fought) so bravely that they are putting the enemy to flight.*
2. **Nostri tam fortiter pugnābant (pugnāvērunt) ut nōn superārentur.** *Our men were fighting (fought) so bravely that they were not conquered.*

(a) Notice that in each of these sentences the dependent clause expresses the Result of the action of the leading verb; also that **ut** introduces positive results, **ut nōn** negative.

(b) Compare these with purpose clauses above and notice that **nē** is used only with negative purpose, **ut nōn** only with negative result clauses; notice also that in result clauses, as in those of purpose, the present tense follows the present point of view, the imperfect the past.

251 Rule.—The Subjunctive is used with **ut, that, ut nōn, that not,** to express Result.

W. 519; B. 284; AG. 319; H. 570.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 252 celeritās, -ātis, f. speed. | porta, -ae, f. a gate. |
| cūr, adv. why? | portus, -ūs, m. harbor. |
| enim, conj. for (nam, 138). | postquam, conj. after.² |
| mille,¹ adj. thousand. | statim, adv. immediately. |
| multitūdō, -inis, f. crowd. | tantus, -a, -um, adj. so great, such. |
| Nūma, -ae, m. Numa. | terreō, -ēre, terrui, territus, to frighten. |
| orō, -āre, to ask, beg. | ut, conj. that. |
| passus, -ūs, m. pace (about five feet). | |

¹ **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. The plural is a neuter noun and is declined: Nom. Acc. Voc. **mīlia**, Gen. **mīlium**, Dat. Abl. **mīlibus**.

² Used with the perfect indicative,

253 1. Cūr senēs iuvenēsque ex portīs oppidī tantā celeritāte adpropinquābant? 2. Hibernīs nostrīs adpropinquābant ut ōrārent nē in numerō hostium habērentur. 3. Postquam sīgnum datum est, nostrī castra statim mōvērunt; barbarī ita terrēbantur ut in oppidō nōn continērentur. 4. Omnēs quī eum locum habitābant, nē frūmentō prohibērentur, māgnā celeritāte decem mīlia passuum¹ in finīs sociōrum properābant. 5. Proximō diē māgna multitūdō Gallōrum locum castrīs magis idōneum occupāvit; tum Caesar cum parte equitātus properāvit ut hunc locum oppūgnāret. 6. Gallī in memoriā tenēbant omnia quae māiōrēs fēcērunt ut patria libera esset; itaque dūx eōrum māgnam spem victōriae habuit. 7. Utinam tāntam fidem habērēmus ut in hāc rē publicā nēmō malus esset. 8. Māiōrem partem cōpiārum continēbat imperātor in hibernīs, quae septem mīlia passuum ab eō oppidō aberant sed proxima portuī. 9. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, cōsul omnia auxilia in sinistrō, sociōs in dextrō cornū tantā celeritāte conlocāvit, ut hostēs statim terrērentur.

254 1. The Gauls often fought that they might not be deprived of their towns and lands. 2. The Romans built their city on hills in order that it might not be suddenly attacked by the enemy. 3. The city was small in the time of Romulus, the first king, but it was afterward enlarged so that it was the greatest city in Italy. 4. The Romans were men of such bravery and courage that they were not often conquered by the enemy. 5. Romulus, in order that he might increase the number of citizens, gave citizenship to many from the neighboring peoples. 6. The next king, whose name was Numa, was very different from Romulus (dative); for he liked peace more than war. 7. Why did consuls, rather than² kings, hold the power afterward?

¹ mille passūs, a Roman *mile*, about 5,000 feet.

² prō.

READING EXERCISE

The Persian Wars

Posterō annō Dārēus, rēx Persārum, lēgātōs in Graeciam mīsit,¹ quī rēgis nōmine terram et aquam ā cīvitatibus Graeciae postulābant; simulque aliī lēgātī maritimās urbēs Āsiae nāvīs longās parāre iubēbant.² Brevī tempore hae urbēs nāvīs, quās rēx eis imperāverat,³ parāvērunt. Lēgātīs, quī in Graeciam missi sunt,⁴ ā multīs cīvitatibus data sunt omnia quae rēx postulāverat; sed contrā eas quae terram et aquam nōn dederant, Dārēus māximō exercitū pūgnāre parāvit. Itaque imperātōrēs eius, Dātis et Artaphernēs, plūrimās nāvīs adversus⁵ Eretriam⁶ et Athēnās dūxērunt, quās urbēs Dārēus expūgnāre atque incolās in servitūtem redigere⁷ māximē cupīvit.⁸ Eretria sex⁹ diēs āb Persīs frustrā¹⁰ oppūgnābātur; sed septimō diē duo cīvēs urbem hostibus prōdidērunt,¹¹ postquam multī utrimque¹² occīsī sunt.¹³ Hostēs omnia vastāvērunt atque incolās, ut¹⁴ Dārēus imperāverat, in servitūtem redēgērunt.¹⁵ Post paucōs diēs ad Atticam nāvigāvērunt hostēs ut Athēniēnsīs quoque superārent. In campum Marathōnium,¹⁶ quī locus totius Atticae opportūnissimus¹⁷ erat equitibus, cōpiās ē nāvibus ēdūxērunt.¹⁸

¹ Perf. indic. act. of **mittō**, to send.

² **iubeō**, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, to order.

³ See 192.

⁴ Perf. indic. pass. of **mittō**.

⁵ Prep. with the accu., *against*; compare **contrā**.

⁶ A city in Euboea.

⁷ To reduce.

⁸ Perf. ind. act. of **cupiō**, to wish.

⁹ Six.

¹⁰ Adv., *in vain*.

¹¹ Perf. indic. act. of **prōdō**, to betray.

¹² Adv., *on both sides*.

¹³ Perf. indic. pass. of **occidō**, to kill.

¹⁴ As.

¹⁵ Perf. ind. act. of **redigere**.

¹⁶ Of Marathon.

¹⁷ **opportūnus**, suited.

¹⁸ Perf. indic. act. of **ēdūcō**, to lead out, to disembark.

LESSON XXXI

THIRD OR ĕ CONJUGATION

PRESENT SYSTEM

256 LEARN the Present System of **regō**, **481**, in the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation end in **-ĕ** (**ĭ**). Compare this with the stems of the First and Second Conjugations.

(b) Notice also that the Future Indicative is not formed by the tense sign **-bĭ-** (**-bĕ**) as in **amābō** and **habēbō**, but that the vowel is **-a** in the First Person Singular and **-e** in the other persons. Compare also the formation of the Present Subjunctive **regam** with **amem** and **habeam**.

257 Conjugate the following: **dicō**, *to say*; **dūcō**, *to lead*; **mittō**, *to send*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

258

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Dūcī persuādent (persuāsērunt) ut auxilium mittat. | <i>They persuade (have persuaded) the leader to send help.</i> |
| 2. Lēgātis imperābit ut bellum gerant. | <i>He will order his lieutenants to carry on the war.</i> |
| 3. Eum ōrābant (ōrāvērunt) nē oppidum oppugnāret. | <i>They were asking (asked) him not to attack the town.</i> |

(a) Notice that in each sentence the dependent clause is a direct object of the verb, that is, that the clause is a substantive; moreover, that each dependent clause expresses also the purpose of the subject of the leading

verb. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Purpose*¹ and are used with verbs whose action looks toward the future.

(b) Notice further that the sequence of Tenses is the same as in simple Purpose Clauses, 248, that is, that the Present Subjunctive follows the present point of view, the Imperfect the past.

- 259** *Rule.*—Substantive Clauses of Purpose with *ut* (negative *nē*) are used after verbs whose action looks toward the future—that is, verbs of Will or Aim.

W. 511; B. 295; AG. 331; H. 564 ff.

260

VOCABULARY

<p>adventus, -ūs, m. <i>arrival</i>.</p> <p>āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ā + mittō), <i>to lose</i>.</p> <p>Appius, -ī, m. <i>Appius</i>.</p> <p>atque, āc,² conj. <i>and</i>.</p> <p>Cineas, -ae,³ m. <i>Cineas</i>.</p> <p>classis, -is, f. <i>fleet</i>.</p> <p>Claudius, -ī, m. <i>Claudius</i>.</p> <p>committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (cum + mittō), <i>to engage</i> (in battle).</p> <p>dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, <i>to say</i>.</p>	<p>Ēpīrus, -ī, f. <i>Epirus</i> (a district of Northwestern Greece).</p> <p>gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, <i>to carry on, perform</i>.</p> <p>iterum, adv. <i>again</i>.</p> <p>lēgātīō, -ōnis, f. <i>embassy</i> (lēgātus, 138).</p> <p>mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, <i>to send</i>.</p> <p>modus, -ī, m. <i>manner</i>.</p> <p>persuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, <i>to persuade</i> (with dat. of the person).</p>
--	---

¹ While Substantive Clauses of Purpose are generally used as objects of the leading verb, they are occasionally employed as subjects of Passive Verbs, e. g., *ut bellum gerant lēgātīs imperātum est*, *That they should carry on the war was the command to the lieutenants*.

² *atque* is used before vowels and consonants, *āc* only before consonants.

³ A Greek name declined like any noun of the First Declension except in the nominative.

petō, -ere, petīvī (-iī),¹ peti- **renūntiō, -āre** (**re + nūntiō,**
tus, to seek, ask. **126), to carry back**

primum, adv. first, for the **word.**
first time.

pūgna, -ae, f. battle (pūgnō, **Tarentinus, -ī, m. a citizen**
101). **of Tarentum (a city in**
Southern Italy).

Pyrrhus, -ī, m. Pyrrhus (King of Epirus).

261 1. Tarentīnī ōrābant Rōmānōs, nē portum suum cum nāvibus intrārent; sed Rōmānī māgnam classem mīsērunt. 2. Itaque Tarentīnī per lēgātiōnem petunt ā Pyrrhō, Ēpīrī rēge, ut auxilium contrā Rōmānōs mittat. 3. Eī persuāsērunt ut statim māgnō exercitū adiuvēret; tum primum Rōmānī cum hoste exterō dīmīcāvērunt. 4. Hī primā pūgnā, quam post adventum Pyrrhī cum eō commīsērunt, ita terrēbantur ut facile superāret rēx ille. 5. Tantam multītūdinem hominum hōc in proeliō āmisit Pyrrhus ut dīceret, “Sī iterum hōc modō Rōmānōs superāverō, bellum diūtius gerere nōn poterō.”² 6. Lēgātī, quī dē captīvīs missī sunt, summō honōre ab Pyrrhō habēbantur; captīvōs statim Rōmam³ mīsīt. 7. Nam ille omnia faciēbat⁴ nē grāvis Rōmānīs Tarentīnīsque vidērētur. 8. Postea Pyrrhus lēgātum, Cīneam nōmine, ad urbem Rōmam mīsīt, eō cōnsiliō, ut pāx cum Rōmānīs esset; multum argentum portābat ut dōnīs persuādēret Rōmānīs. 9. Sed Appius Claudius, vir clārissimus, cīvibus persuāsīt nē cum rēge pācem cōfirmārent. 10. Itaque Cīneas Pyrrhō renūntiāvit: “Urbs Rōma templum, patria rēgum, hominēs rēgēs esse videntur.”

262 1. An embassy is sent by the Romans to ask Pyrrhus to liberate the prisoners. 2. Pyrrhus ordered the Roman

¹ A number of verbs have two forms in the perfect active, e. g., **petīvī** or **petiī**. ² Future indic. of **possum, to be able**.

³ Compare **236, 10**.

⁴ *Did*.

prisoners to be liberated and sent to the city. 3. You will not persuade the Romans to establish peace, if you remain in Italy. 4. In the first battle in which he engaged after his arrival, Pyrrhus was victorious,¹ but he lost many men. 5. He said, "If I fight again in this way, I shall no longer have an army." 6. I hope that (utinam) there will not be a victory of this sort again. 7. They persuaded Pyrrhus not to fight again on that day. 8. Cineas captured more cities by eloquence² than by arms. 9. The chief man of the embassy asked the Romans to make peace with the king, but Appius persuaded them to carry on the war much longer.

LESSON XXXII

THIRD CONJUGATION (Continued)

PERFECT SYSTEM

- 263 LEARN the Perfect System of **regō**, 481, in the Indicative,³ and review the Perfect System in the Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations.

264

VOCABULARY

Africa , -ae, f. <i>Africa</i> .	cōgō , -ere, coēgi , coāctus
agō , -ere, ēgi , āctus , to drive, do. ⁴	(cum + agō), to drive together, to compel.
Carthāginiēnsis , -e, <i>Carthaginian</i> .	condiciō , -ōnis, f. <i>condition</i> , terms.

¹ **vīctor**.² **vōce**.

³ The perfect and pluperfect Subjunctives and the other moods will be learned later.

⁴ **grātiās agere**, to pay thanks, to thank. Compare **grātiām habēre**, to feel grateful.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus,	quod, conj. because.
<i>to exert one's self, hasten.</i>	reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (re +
deinde,¹ adv. then, second-	dō) to return.
ly.	Rēgulus, -ī, m. Regulus (a
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to	Roman general).
lead (dūx, 144).	rūrsus, adv. again.
indignus, -a, -um, unworthy,	senātus, -ūs, m. senate.
shameful.	sententia, -ae, f. opinion.
ingēns, -tis, huge.	tot (indeclinable), so many.
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Lace-	trādūco, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus,
daemonian.	to lead across (trāns +
perītus, -a, -um, skilled, ex-	dūcō).
perienced.	ūnus, -a, -um,² one, a single.

- 265 1. Rēgulus, princeps Rōmānōrum, exercitum in Africam trādūxit ut ibi bellum gereret. 2. Ille erat vir summae virtūtis; māgnā spē victōriae contrā hostis contendit. 3. Mox multīs pūgnīs Carthāginiēnsīs ita superāvit ut pācem petere cōgerentur. Senātus Rōmānus illī grātiās ēgit quod rēs in Africā bene gesserat. 4. Rēgulus dūrisimās condiciōnēs dabat; deinde Carthāginiēnsēs ā Lacedaemoniīs petiērunt ut imperātōrem bellī perītissimum mitterent. 5. Ab eō Rōmānī ingentī clāde superātī sunt et māgnam partem exercitūs āmisērunt. Inter captīvōs erat Rēgulus. 6. Sed proximō annō bellum fēliciter rūrsus gerēbant Rōmānī et post multa mala³ hostēs Rēgulum captivum Rōmam⁴ mittere cōgerentur, ut per eum pācem peterent. 7. Postquam eum in senātum dūxērunt Rōmānī, eī imperāvērunt ut sententiam dē pāce et captivīs Rōmānīs diceret. 8. Ille ōrābat nē tot milia captivōrum propter ūnum senem et paucōs Rōmānōs redderent ut

¹ Always a dissyllable.

² Genitive sing. ūnīus, dat. sing. ūnī; otherwise declined like bonus. Compare tōtus, 177.

³ mala: neut. plur. used as a substantive.

⁴ Compare 236, 10.

indigna pax cum hostibus esset. 9. Hęc sententiā mōtī sunt Rōmānī ut bellum multō ācrius administrārent; sed Rēgulus ā Carthāginiēnsibus indīgnissimō modō est necātus.

- 266 1. The Senate ordered Regulus to lead an army across into Africa. 2. Regulus led an army across into Africa with the design of carrying on war with the Carthaginians. 3. In what manner did Regulus carry on the war after his arrival? 4. Regulus was a general experienced in war and he quickly compelled the Carthaginians to sue for peace. 5. The Senate thanked Regulus, and then asked him to give¹ his opinion with regard to the conditions of peace. 6. He said: "It is not best to return the prisoners, but to send me back to Africa again." 7. Regulus was a man of great patriotism and great courage; the manner of his death was most sad. 8. Regulus was held in the highest honor by the Romans on account of his many victories and his great spirit.

LESSON XXXIII

THIRD CONJUGATION (Verbs in -iō)

- 267 LEARN the conjugation of **capiō**, 482, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative, and in the Present Subjunctive the -i of the

¹ dīcō.

stem is retained whenever it is followed by another vowel.

268

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF RESULT

1. **Efficit** (**effēcit**) **ut socii omnia dūcī renūntient.** *He secures (has secured) the result that the allies report everything to the leader, or He succeeds (has succeeded) in having the allies, etc.*
2. **Efficiet** **ut socii omnia dūcī renūntient.** *He will succeed in having, etc.*
3. **Impetrābat** (**impetrāvit**) **ab eō ut castra nōn movēret.** *He was obtaining (obtained) from him the result that he did not break camp.*

(a) Compare these clauses with Substantive Clauses of Purpose (258), and notice that these also bear the relation of substantives to leading verbs as well as express the result actually obtained in each case. Such clauses are called *Substantive Clauses of Result* and are used with verbs expressing the accomplishment of a result.¹

(b) Notice that the sequence of tenses is the same as in all other Result or Purpose Clauses.

269

Rule.—Substantive Clauses of Result with **ut** (negative **ut nōn**) fill out or complete what is implied in the leading verb.

W. 521-526; B. 297; AG. 332; H. 571.

¹ A Substantive Clause of Result may also be the Subject of the leading verb, e. g., **impetrātum est ut omnia renūntiārentur.** *The result obtained was that everything was reported.*

270

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY QUĪN, *that not*

EXAMPLES

1. Nōn dubitō quīn socii haec renūntient. *I do not doubt that the allies are reporting this.*
2. Nōn dubitābo quīn socii haec renūntient. *I shall not doubt that the allies will report this.*
3. Nōn erat dubium quīn socii haec renūntiārent. *There was no doubt that the allies reported this.*
4. Nōn dēterrēbantur hostēs quīn in finis sociōrum contenderent. *The enemy were not deterred from hurrying into the lands of the allies.*

271

Rule.—Substantive clauses introduced by *quīn* are used depending on a negative verb, or verbal expression, of Doubting, Hindering, and the like.

W. 575-579; B. 298; AG. 332, *g*; H. 595-596.

272

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|---|
| clam, adv. <i>secretly</i> . | dēnique, adv. <i>finally</i> . |
| Cunctātor, -ōris, m. <i>The Delayer</i> (a name applied to Fabius). | dēterreō, -ēre, -terrui, -itus (dē + terreō, 252), <i>to frighten away, deter</i> . |
| cupiō, -ere, -ivī (-iī), -itus, <i>to desire</i> . | dubitō, -āre, <i>to doubt</i> . |
| dēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dē + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead away</i> . | efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ē + faciō), <i>to accomplish, bring about</i> . |
| dēfendō, -ere, -dī, dēfēnsus, <i>to defend</i> . | Fabius, -ī, m. <i>Fabius</i> . |
| | faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, ¹ <i>to do, make</i> . |

¹ The irregular passive will be given later; but compounds of *faciō* which like *efficiō* change *a* to *i* have a regular passive, *efficior*, etc.

fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus,	Saguntum, -ī, n. <i>Saguntum</i> <i>to flee.</i> (a city in Spain).
Hannibal, -alis, m. <i>Hannibal.</i>	tergum, -ī, n. <i>back.</i>
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est (impersonal), <i>it is per-</i> <i>mitted.</i>	trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns + dō), <i>to hand over, be-</i> <i>tray.</i>
quīn, conj. <i>but that, from.</i>	uter, utra, utrum, <i>which of</i> <i>two?</i> ¹
ratio, -ōnis, f. <i>way, reason.</i>	

- 273 1. Deinde postquam Saguntum ā Carthāginiēnsibus armīs captum est, statim lēgatiō in Africam missa est, cūius princeps erat Fabius. 2. Fabius effēcit ut in Africam mitterētur. “Hīc,” dīxit senātuī Carthāginiēnsium, “bellum et pācem portō. Utrum vōbīs² optimum vidētur, habēre licet.” 3. Nōn dubitābat Fabius hōc bellō quīn novam bellī ratiōnem capere melius esset. 4. Itaque morā rem pūblicam dēfendit: sī hostēs terga dabant atque fugiēbant, ad eōs contendit; sī pūgnāre cupiēbant, Fabius agmen dēdūxit. 5. Hōc modō effēcit ut Cunc-tātōris nōmen caperet et summus perītissimusque dūx laudārētur. 6. Nōn dubium erat quīn Fabius rem pūblicam morā servāret. 7. Tamen dūx Carthāginiēnsium nōn dēterrēbātur quīn bellum māgnā cum virtūte cele-ritāteque gereret. 8. Tarentīnī iuvenēs, ut urbem Carthāginiēnsibus trāderent, ad Hannibalem contendērunt et eum dē cōnsiliō suō certiōrem fēcērunt.³ 9. Hannibal iuvenibus persuāsit ut pecora Carthāginiēnsium, quae in agrīs erant, ad urbem agerent. 10. Id saepe fēcērunt; dēnique Hannibal milītēsque ēius cum iuvenibus portīs clam adpropinquāvērunt atque urbem intrābant.

¹ Genitive sing. in all genders **utrīus**; dat. sing. **utrī**. Compare the demonstrative pronouns (123, 135).

² *To you.*

³ **eum certiōrem facere, to inform him.**

- 274** 1. There was no doubt that Fabius was managing affairs well by his policy of delay.¹ 2. The soldiers were not deterred by fear of the enemy from hastening in line of battle to the town. 3. He made the enemy turn their backs and flee in great haste. 4. Hannibal ordered the young men to drive the flocks to the city-gates. 5. Finally Hannibal succeeded in² entering the city secretly with his soldiers. 6. The Carthaginians desired to make war, because they had no doubt that Hannibal was a more skilful general than Fabius. 7. "Again a victory of this sort, and I shall have made an end of the war." 8. "The Romans also have a general skilled in war. We have lost the city in the same³ way in which we took it."

LESSON XXXIV

FOURTH OR -ī CONJUGATION

- 275** LEARN the conjugation of **audiō, 483**, in the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive.

(a) Notice that the stem of verbs in this Conjugation ends with -ī, and compare this with the stems of the other Conjugations. Observe that verbs like **capiō, 483**, have a number of forms similar to those of the Fourth Conjugation, but that the stem vowels differ, as is shown by the Present Infinitives.

(b) Notice that the Tense Sign of the Future Indica-

¹ Translate simply, *by delay*.

² *efficere ut*.

³ *eōdem*.

tive in verbs of the Third and Fourth Conjugations is -e- (-a-), but in verbs of the First and Second -bi- (-be-).

276

VOCABULARY

anteā, adv. *before*.

Antiochus, -ī, m. *Antiochus*.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, *to find out, to become acquainted with*.

dēdō, -ere, -didi, -ditus (dē + dō), *to give up*.

Hispānia, -ae, f. *Spain*.

impediō, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -itus, *to impede, hinder*.

iniūria, -ae, f. *injury, wrong*.

opera, -ae, f. *labor*.¹

pellō, -ere, **populī**, **pulsus**, *to drive*.

relinquō, -ere, -liquī, -lictus, *to leave behind*.

sciō, **scire**, **scīvī**, **scitus**, *to know (a fact)*.

simul, adv. *at the same time*.

sub, prep. with accu. and abl. *under*.²

Syria, -ae, f. *Syria*.

veniō, -īre, **vēnī**, **ventūrus**, *to come*.

- 277** 1. Hannibal puer ā patre petīvit ut cum exercitū Carthāginiēnsī in Hispāniam venīre licēret. 2. "Nōn prohibēbō," dixit pater, "quīn ad castra mea veniās, sī fidem quam postulō dederis." 3. Hannibal, pūgnae avidissimus, equitibus imperāvit ut dē adventū hostium cōgnōscerent. 4. Nōn dubitāvit quīn eōs facile fugāret; sed neque numerum hostium neque ratiōnem pūgnae scīvit. 5. Agmen hostium tantā celeritāte sub montem vēnit ut Hannibal neque iter impedīret neque locum castrīs idōneum caperet. 6. Posterō diē ab Rōmānīs in aciē diū fēliciterque pūgnātum est ut hostēs pellerentur. 7. Lēgātī ad urbem vēnērunt ut senātūī populōque Rōmānō grātiās agerent simulque peterent ut captīvī redderentur. 8. Impetrā-

¹ **operam dare**, *to give attention to, to take pains*.

² **sub** with the accusative denotes motion to a place, **sub montem**, *to the foot of the mountain*; with the ablative rest in a place, **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain*. Compare **in**.

vērunt lēgātī ut captīvī et obsidēs quōs Rōmānīs dederant sine morā redderentur. 9. Postquam Hannibal in Ītaliā rēs bene gessit, in Africam nāvigāvit ut patriam quoque dēfenderet hostisque ex eā pelleret. 10. Postea Hannibal Africam clam reliquit et ad rēgem Antiochum in Syriam fūgit, nē Rōmānīs dēderētur. 11. Eīs partibus et sub eō caelō fuit eōdem¹ animō, quō anteā, ac semper operam dedit, ut Rōmānīs iniūriam faceret.

- 278** 1. Hannibal came into Italy in order that he might bring injury upon the Roman nation. 2. The Romans could² not keep Hannibal from leading his army across into Italy. 3. They could² not hinder his approach;³ but after he came to the foot of the mountains which are not far from Rome, they sent Fabius against him with the greatest speed. 4. No one doubted that Hannibal was a greater general than Fabius; but the latter kept him from besieging the city. 5. He always made an effort to become acquainted with the enemy's method of warfare. 6. After Hannibal left Africa, he came to the king of Syria, where he remained many years. 7. Ambassadors came, who asked that their general might be allowed to leave Italy with his wounded.

LESSON XXXV

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

- 279** REVIEW the Indicative, Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of the four conjugations (479-483).

¹ Abl. of *idem*, the same.

² *poterant*.

³ *iter*.

280

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

1. **Equitēs praemittit quī** *He sends forward horsemen*
videant. *to see (who are to see).*
2. **Equitēs praemisit quō celerius imperātor haec** *He sent horsemen forward*
audiret. *that the general might*
hear this the quicker.

(a) Notice that in the first sentence the Relative **quī** introduces the Purpose Clause and is equivalent to **ut eī**. A Relative rather than **ut** is used to introduce a Purpose Clause when the antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the antecedent clause.

(b) Notice that in the second sentence the Purpose Clause contains a comparative, **celerius**; **quō** is the ablative case of the relative and is equivalent to **ut eō**, the Ablative being the Ablative of the Degree of Difference, 197. We translate by the English adverb *the*, as in the phrases *the more, the less, the quicker*, etc. **Quō** is only used to introduce Purpose Clauses which contain a Comparative. The Sequence is the same as in other Purpose Clauses.

281

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

1. **Sunt quī putent.** *There are men who think.*
2. **Nēmō est quī haec nōn** *There is no one who does*
faciat. *not do this.*
3. **Quis erat quī haec nōn** *Who was there who did not*
faceret? *do this?*
4. **Nōn is sum quī haec dicam.** *I am not one to say this.*

(a) Notice that the principal clause is either a negative or general expression stating something indefinitely, and that the relative clauses answer the question, *Of what kind?* Such clauses are called *Relative Clauses of Characteristic*.

(b) Whenever the antecedent is definite, the relative clause defines who or what is meant and only incidentally characterizes the antecedent, e. g., *Brūtus erat qui Caesarem occidit. It was Brutus who killed Caesar. Hic est qui haec dicit. This is the man who says this.* In such relative clauses the Indicative is regularly used.

- 282 *Rule.*—A relative clause which states the natural result or Character of something suggested indefinitely in the principal clause, is called a Clause of Characteristic and takes the Subjunctive.

W. 587-588; B. 283; AG. 320; H. 591.

283

VOCABULARY

Alciadiadēs, -is, m. <i>Alciadiades.</i>	plērique, plēraeqne, plēra-
expediō, -ire, -ivī (-ii), -itus	que, the most of. ¹
to get ready (impediō,	potestās, -tātis, f. power,
276).	ability.
incendo, -ere, -cendi, -cēnsus,	praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
to set fire to.	(prae + faciō, 272), to put
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus	in command of. ²
(inter + faciō), to kill.	praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus
magistrātus, -ūs, m. <i>magis-</i>	(prae + mittō, 260), to
<i>trate, office.</i>	send ahead.
mōs, mōris, m. <i>custom; plur.</i>	recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus
<i>character.</i>	(re + capiō, 267), to re-
occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, to	cover, receive.
cut down, to kill.	redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus
Persa, -ae, m. <i>a Persian.</i>	(re + dūcō, 264), to lead
perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventū-	or bring back.
rus (per + veniō, 276), to	revocō, -āre (re + vocō, 80),
arrive.	to recall.
Pharnabāzus, -ī, <i>Pharnaba-</i>	satis, adv. enough, suffi-
<i>zus (a Persian satrap).</i>	ciently.

¹ Rare in the singular.

² With the accu. of person and the dative of thing.

sentio, -ire, sēnsi, sēnsūrus, vincō, -ere, vicī, victus, *to*
to be aware of, perceive. conquer (vīctor, 158; vic-
 Sicilia, -ae, f. *Sicily.* tōria, 111).
 simul atque (āc), conj. *as soon as.*

284 1. Alcibiadēs honōrēs māximē cupiēbat, bella terrā
 marīque fēliciter gerēbat; neque erat is quī facile terrērē-
 tur. 2. Postquam Alcibiadēs in Siciliam pervēnit, nāvis
 ā magistrātibus Athēniēnsibus praemissa est, quae eum
 redūcerēt. 3. Sed Alcibiadēs mōrēs Athēniēnsium satis
 cōgnōvit; itaque simul atque in Ītaliā pervēnit, ad
 hostīs Athēniēnsium fugīvit nē interficerētur. 4. Postea
 ad Persās fugere coāctus est; tum suōs cīvīs ita adiuvā-
 bat ut dēnique revocātus, classī praeficerētur. 5. Hōc in
 imperiō tantam classem expedit ut plērāsque urbēs
 Asiae reciperet quae in potestātem hostium vēnerant.
 6. Nēmō est quī nōn audiat dē victōriīs Alcibiadis, nēmō
 quī eum vidēre nōn cupiat; nam simul āc dē ēius adventū
 sēnsērunt, omnēs ad portum contendērunt. 7. Postquam
 Athēniēnsēs victī sunt, in Asiam fugere coāctus est Alci-
 biades. Sed nōn erat is quī patriam liberāre nōn cupe-
 ret; itaque ā Pharnabāzo petīvit ut ad rēgem Persārū
 mitterētur. 8. Tum Lacedaemoniī eum prohibēre statuē-
 runt ā rēge auxilium petere; itaque paucī clam praemissī
 sunt qui eum occīderent; aedificium in quō erat incendē-
 runt.

285 1. Who was there who did not hurry to the harbor, to
 see Alcibiades and to hear his voice? 2. By the advice
 of Alcibiades the Lacedaemonians sent forward men to
 take possession of a citadel. 3. Alcibiades was aware of
 the plans of the magistrates, but he was not a man to be
 frightened. 4. As soon as their foes had defeated the
 Athenians, he fled to the Persians, in order that he might
 not be killed. 5. Men were sent to set fire to the build-
 ing in which Alcibiades was and to kill him. 6. So this

man who had been the most famous general the Athenians had known, was cut down in a most undeserved death. 7. Why did his citizens drive him from his native land and not defend him against his enemies?

READING EXERCISE

The Battle of Marathon

286 Postquam Athēniēnsēs haec cōgnōvērunt, nūntium ad Lacedaemoniōs mīserunt quī peteret ut quam celerrimē auxilium mitterent. Sed propter¹ diēs festōs² Athēniēnsīs statim adiuvāre eis nōn licēbat. Itaque nūlla civitās auxilium dedit praeter³ Plataeēnsīs⁴; ea civitās mille milītēs mīsīt. Quōrum adventū decem milia armātōrum⁵ complēta sunt.⁶ Huic exercitūi sunt praefectī decem dūcēs, in quibus princeps erat Miltiadēs. Hīc cēteris persuāsīt ut cōpiās ex urbe in campum Marathōnium statim dūcerent locōque idōneō castra facerent. Ubi is diēs vēnit quō Miltiadēs summum imperium habēbat, aciem ita instrūxit⁷ ut longitūdinem⁸ Persārum aciēi aequāret⁹ sed in mediā¹⁰ aciē ordinēs minus firmī¹¹ essent quam in cornibus. Quamquam Athēniēnsēs numerō inferiōrēs erant, nōn dubitābant quīn Persās vincere possent.¹² Itaque ubi sīgnum datum est, contrā hostīs māximā virtūte properābant; in mediā aciē barbarī superiōrēs erant; sed postquam Athēniēnsēs et Plataeēnsēs, quī in cornibus Persās vīcerant, in eōs qui mediam Athē-

¹ Prep. with accu., *on account of*.

² *Festival*.

³ Prep. with accu., *with the exception of*.

⁴ *Men of Plataea* (a city in southern Boeotia).

⁵ *armātī*, *armed men*.

⁶ *complēō*, *-ēre*, *to make up*.

⁷ *instruō*, *-ere*, *to draw up*.

⁸ *longitūdō*, *-inis*, *length (longus)*.

⁹ *aequō*, *-āre*, *to equal*.

¹⁰ *medius*, *-a*, *-um*, *middle of*.

¹¹ *fīrmus*, *-a*, *-um*, *strong*.

¹² Impf. subj. of *possum*, *to be able*.

niēnsium aciem pellēbant, impetum fēcērunt, māgnam partem eōrum occīdērunt; reliquī nōn castra sed nāvīs petēbant. Quārum septem cēpērunt Athēniēnsēs. Numquam parva manus tantās cōpiās fugāverat: decemplex¹ numerum hostium vīcerant Graeci.

LESSON XXXVI

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

- 287** VERBS having Passive forms but Active meanings are called Deponents.
- 288** Learn the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *hortor* and *vereor* (484).
- 289** SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF FEARING

EXAMPLES

1. *Vereor* (*veritus sum*) *nē* *I fear (I have feared) that he may come.*
veniat.
2. *Verēbar* (*veritus sum*) *ut* *I was fearing (I feared) that he might not come.*
veniret.

(a) Notice that the clauses introduced by *nē* and *ut* are the objects of the introductory verbs, and are therefore also called Substantive Clauses, like similar clauses of Purpose (258) and of Result (268).

¹ *decemplex, -icis, ten times.*

(b) Notice also that after a verb of fearing *nē* means *that* or *lest*, *ut* means *that not*.¹

290 *Rule*.—Substantive Clauses with verbs of Fearing are introduced by *nē*, *that*, *ut*, *that not*.

W. 516; B. 296, 2; AG. 331, f.; H. 567.

291

VOCABULARY

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, *to try*.

cotidiē, adv. (quot + diē)
daily.

Ēlis, -idis, f. *Elis* (a district in the western Peloponnesus).

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (ex + pello, 276), *to drive out*.

incolumis, -e, *safe, uninjured*.²

inquit,³ *said he* (etc.).

invitus, -a, -um, *unwilling*.²

Lacedaemōn, -onis, f. *Sparta*.

libertās, -tātis, f. *liberty, freedom*.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itus, *to fortify*.

nōnnūllī, -ae, -a, *some, a few*.

ob, prep. with accu., *on account of*.

pedes, -itis, m. *foot soldier*.

poena, -ae, f. *penalty*.

premō, -ere, *pressī*, *pressus*, *to press, oppress*.

quot, adj. indeclin. *how many? as many as* (compare *tot*, 264).

supplicium, -ī, n. *punishment*.

vehementer, adv. *violently, exceedingly*.

292 1. Alcibiadēs vehementer verēbātur nē odiō supplicisque premerētur. 2. "Alcibiadem hortēmur," inquit

¹ The reason for this apparent reversal of the meanings of the two particles is that originally the clauses introduced by *ut* or *nē* were independent, the Subjunctive being the Optative (241): *vereor*, *I am fearful*; *ut veniat*, *may he come* (but my fear is that he will not); *vereor: nē veniat*, *may he not come* (but I fear he will). In the development of the Latin language the originally independent clauses became dependent, so that we are obliged to translate as indicated above.

² This may often be conveniently translated by an adverb.

³ This is the only common form of the defective verb *inquam*, say *I*, inserted in direct quotations.

ēius inimīcus, “ut in prōvinciam contendat, quō eum facilius premāmus.” 3. Invītus Alcibiadēs urbem reliquit; plērīque enim cīvēs inimīcī erant et eum occidere cupiebant. 4. Alcibiadēs ab custōdibus fūgit nē poenās dare cōgerētur, atque incolumis primum in Ēlidem, deinde Lacedaemonem¹ pervēnit. 5. Ibi magistrātibus Lacedaemoniōrum persuāsit ut peditēs equitēsque mitterent quī arcem Athēniēnsium mūnīrent. 6. Sed simul atque hostēs virtūtem Alcibiadis cōgnōvērunt, veritī sunt nē ob patriae amōrem Athēniēnsium amīcitiam rūsus petere cōnārētur. 7. Itaque nōnnūllī Alcibiadem interficere cupiebant; verēbantur enim nē ā cīvibus revocārētur et militēs suōs iterum ex patriā suā expelleret. 8. “Utinam Alcibiadēs in nostrā patriā esset. Nēmō est enim quī fēlicius sapientiusque rem pūblicam gerat.” 9. Alcibiadēs cotīdiē operam dedit ut Athēniēnsēs libertātem reciperent nēve² in potestāte Lacedaemoniōrum essent. 10. Quot militēs eā pūgnā amīsīt? Multa milia hominum amīsīt, atque etiam plūrēs equōs scūtaque.

- 293** 1. They feared that Alcibiades would run away and come in safety to the Persian king. 2. Alcibiades sailed to Sicily against his will, for he greatly feared that he would be oppressed by his enemies. 3. They attempted to persuade the magistrates to send a ship at once. 4. The magistrates ordered the messengers to bring Alcibiades back to Greece. 5. Alcibiades fled in order that he might not be carried to Greece and made to suffer punishment. 6. “Let us have a few soldiers to fortify this place; this garrison is not large enough to deter the neighboring tribes from attacking the camp.” 7. When they saw Alcibiades unharmed, they could hardly be prevented from carrying him to the city in their arms.³

¹ Compare 236, 10. ² Nēve (nē + ve) before vowels, neu before consonants, is used to introduce the second member of a purpose clause when negative. ³ manus.

LESSON XXXVII

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND
FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

- 294 LEARN the Indicative entire, the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive, and the Present Infinitive of *sequor* and *potior* (484).

SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS

- 295 Semi-Dependent Verbs have Active forms in the Present System and Passive forms in the Perfect System, keeping their Active meanings throughout. There are but four Semi-Deponents :

audeō, audēre, ausus, to dare. *

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus, to rejoice.

soleō, solēre, solitus, to be wont.

fidō, fidere, fisis,¹ to trust.

296

ABLATIVE WITH DEPONENTS

EXAMPLES

1. *Hōc cōnsiliō ūtitur.* *He uses this advice.*
2. *Omnibus rēbus fruī.* *To enjoy all things.*
3. *Urbe hostium potitī sunt.* *They got possession of the enemy's city.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Ablative is used where in English we use the Accusative (Objective)

¹ The compound *cōnfidō, to have confidence*, is much more common than the simple *fidō*.

case. Such ablatives are Ablatives of Instrument or of Means (109) and are used with five deponents and their compounds.

- 297** *Rule.*—The Ablative is used with *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, and their compounds.¹

W. 387; B. 218, 1; AG. 249; H. 477.

298

VOCABULARY

<i>accipio</i> , -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus (ad + <i>capiō</i> , 267), <i>to receive, get.</i>	<i>numquam</i> , adv. (<i>nē + umquam</i>), <i>never.</i>
<i>Aemilius</i> , -ī, m. <i>Aemilius.</i>	<i>periculōsus</i> , -a, -um, <i>full of risk, dangerous.</i>
<i>Āpūlia</i> , -ae, f. <i>Apulia.</i>	<i>probō</i> , -āre, <i>to approve.</i>
<i>cōnsequor</i> , -ī, -secūtus (<i>cum + sequor</i>), <i>to overtake.</i>	<i>proficīscor</i> , -ī, -fectus, <i>to set out.</i>
<i>dolor</i> , -ōris, m. <i>grief.</i>	<i>quidam</i> , <i>quaedam</i> , <i>quoddam</i> , ³ <i>a, a certain.</i>
<i>ēiusmodi</i> , ² adj. <i>of that sort, such.</i>	<i>umquam</i> , adv. <i>ever.</i>
<i>experior</i> , -īrī, -pertus, <i>to try, prove.</i>	<i>ūtor</i> , -ī, <i>ūsus</i> , <i>to use.</i>
<i>medius</i> , -a, -um, <i>middle, middle of.</i>	<i>Varrō</i> , -ōnis, m. <i>Varro.</i>

- 299** 1. Simul atque Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnit, contrā eum summā celeritāte profecti sunt cōsulēs, Aemilius et Varrō. 2. Aemiliō minus periculōsum vidēbātur eā ratiōne bellī morāque ūtī quā Fabius ūsus erat; sed Varrō ācriōra cōnsilia sequi solēbātur. 3. Aemilius, quī verēbātur nē Rōmānī superārentur, invītus pūgnāvit; Rōmānī ingenti clāde pulsī sunt. 4. Numquam gravius vulnus accēpit rēs pūblica; plērīque dūcēs tribūnīque indīgnā

¹ As *fungor*, *to perform*, and *vēscor*, *to feed*, are not common in the Latin authors which pupils first read, they are not used in this book; but the complete rule should be learned for future convenience.

² The genitives *ēius* and *modī* written as one word.

³ Declined in full, 475.

morte interfecti sunt atque Hannibal magnā praedā potius est. 5. Aemilium mediā in pūgnā vulneratum vidit tribūnus quidam, quī hortābatur ut equum suum caperet et fugeret. 6. "Etiam sine tuā morte," inquit tribūnus, "satis doloris est. Nihil impedit quin fugiās, nēmō tē cōsequetur. 7. Sed cōsul tribūnō imperāvit ut magistratibus renūtiāret ut urbem mūnirent. 8. Quot hominēs occisi sunt hāc pūgnā? Multa milia; numquam enim Rōmāni eiusmodi clādem experti sunt. 9. Lēgātus Hannibalem hortābatur ut ad urbem contenderet. "Diē quartō," inquit, "vīctor sub moenibus eris." 10. Ubi hōc cōsiliū nōn probāvit Hannibal, dixit ille, "Superrare hostis scis, victoriā uti nōn cūpis."

- 300** 1. The consuls set out immediately, in order that they might follow the enemy. 2. Hannibal did not know how to take advantage of¹ the victory, for the Romans were in his power. 3. Aemilius was not accustomed to employ dispatch, and did not try to overtake the enemy's foot-soldiers with his cavalry. 4. Nothing prevents you from taking my horse and fleeing, that you may not meet an undeserved death. 5. At daybreak Hannibal took possession of the Roman camp; the Romans did not attempt to defend it. 6. The consul who had been put in command of the foot was afraid he should not conquer Hannibal. 7. How many soldiers were slain in this battle? So many thousands that this was the greatest disaster which a Roman army ever experienced.

¹ I. e., *to use*.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF THE
SUBJUNCTIVE

301 LEARN the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of **sum** (485) and in the four Conjugations, including deponent verbs (479-484).

302 Among the constructions thus far learned the chief use of the Perfect Subjunctive is in Result Clauses where after an introductory verb in a secondary tense the Perfect Subjunctive states the result as a simple fact, and corresponds to the Perfect Indicative of an independent statement: **Galli ita perterriti sunt ut nihil fēcerint**, *The Gauls were so thoroughly frightened that they did nothing.*

(a) Here **fēcerint** corresponds to **fēcērunt** of a simple statement. If the imperfect **facerent** had been used in the Result Clause, it would have indicated the continuance of the action, *were doing*.

303 The Pluperfect Tense of the Subjunctive may be used in wishes referring to the past (the Optative-Subjunctive, 241): **utinam haec fēcisset**, *Would that he had done this.*

(a) The Pluperfect like the Imperfect of the Optative Subjunctive is always introduced by **utinam**.

304 Naturally both the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used in Characterizing Clauses (281):

1. *Is est quī nihil timuerit.* *He is a man who has feared nothing.*
 2. *Is erat quī nihil timuisset.* *He was a man who had feared nothing.*

(a) The other important uses of the Perfect and Pluperfect will be noticed in later lessons.

305

VOCABULARY

<i>audeō, -ēre, ausus, to dare.</i>	<i>moror, -ārī, -ātus, to delay.</i>
<i>cōfido, -ere, -fīsus (cum + fīdō), to have confidence.</i>	<i>oblivīscor, -ī, -lītus, to forget.²</i>
<i>cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily.</i>	<i>paene, adv. almost.</i>
<i>dēspērō, -āre, to despair.</i>	<i>pecūnia, -ae, f. money.</i>
<i>dēsum, -esse, -fui, to be lacking, to fail.¹</i>	<i>perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus (per + terreō, 252), to terrify.</i>
<i>fruor, -ī, fructus, to enjoy.</i>	<i>sic, adv. so.³</i>
<i>loquor, -ī, locūtus, to talk.</i>	<i>tam, adv. so.⁴</i>

306

1. Nūntiō hūius clādis Rōmānī sic perterritī sunt ut nihil facere nihilque dīcere ausī sint. 2. Māgnum dolōrem accēpērunt cīvēs; nēmō loquēbātur, omnēs tam trīstēs erant ut nēmō contrā hostīs proficīscī audēret. 3. Hannibal tamen nōn erat is quī vīctōriā ūtī scīret; atque nunc quoque vīctōriā fruī, non ūtī, cupiēbat. 4. Utinam morātus esset noster exercitus; nē Fabī eiusque bellī ratiōnis obliviscāmur. 5. Nec tamen dēspērāvērunt Rōmānī; omnia faciēbant nē libertātem potestātemque āmitterent nēve in aciē vincerentur. 6. Quod arma quibus pūgnārent deerant, ex templīs scūta tēlaque hostium cēpērunt quibus ūterentur. 7. Pecūniam tēlaque quibus

¹ With the dative, not accusative.

² With the genitive of the object. Compare 156.

³ Modifying verbs.

⁴ Modifying adjectives and adverbs, not verbs. Compare ita, 182.

ūtēbantur,¹ senātus suā operā expedit, ut urbs facile dēfenderētur. 8. Hannibal fidē² Rōmānae sic cōfīdēbat ut captīvos eōrum ad urbem sine custōdibus mīserit. 9. Utinam castrīs hostium potītī essēmus; atque nunc cēterōs statim cōsequāmur nē his auxilium darent. 10. Rōmānī cum eīs nātiōnibus paene cotidiānis proeliis pūgnāre solēbant ut adventū tot mīlium novōrum hostium nōn perterritī sint.

- 307** 1. Hannibal acted with so little speed that the Romans did not despair of the state. 2. Hannibal knew how to enjoy a victory, but not how to use one.³ 3. Would that the Romans had followed the advice of Aemilius! 4. The advice of Aemilius was to delay and not to fight, for to engage with the enemy at once was dangerous. 5. Because young men were lacking, the senate ordered the slaves to be liberated and armed. 6. The Romans lost so many men in this battle that they no longer had an army. 7. They no longer had enough foot-soldiers to send against Hannibal. 8. They were not a people who had been accustomed to be afraid that they would be conquered.

¹ How does the indic. here differ from the subj. in the preceding sentence?

² Dat. with cōfīdēbat; translate by the English objective.

³ Omit in translating.

LESSON XXXIX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

308

SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. Si adest, bene est. | <i>If he is here, it is well.</i> |
| 2. Si aderat, bene erat. | <i>If he was here, it was well.</i> |
| 3. Si adfuit, bene fuit. | <i>If he has been (was) here, it has been (was) well.</i> |

(a) Notice that the time of these sentences is either Present or Past, and that nothing is implied as to whether the subject actually is, was, or has been here. Such conditions are called *Simple Present* or *Past Conditional Sentences*.

(b) The Condition, or Subordinate Clause, of the Sentence is frequently called the *Prótasis*; the Conclusion, or Principal Clause, is called the *Apódosis*.

309

Rule.—In Simple Present or Past Conditional Sentences, implying nothing as to the fact, the Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis.

W. 553; B. 302; AG. 306; H. 574.

310

CONTRARY TO FACT CONDITIONS

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1. Si adesset, bene esset. | <i>If he were here, it would be well.</i> |
| 2. Si adfuisset, bene fuisset. | <i>If he had been here, it would have been well.</i> |

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences imply that the supposition is not true, i. e., that he is not, or was not here. Such conditions are called *Conditions Contrary to Fact*.

(b) Notice further that the Imperfect Subjunctive refers to Present time, the Pluperfect to Past.

- 311** *Rule.*—In Present and Past Conditional Sentences contrary to fact, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are used in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect referring to Present, the Pluperfect to Past Time.

W. 557; B. 304; AG. 308; H. 579.

312FUTURE CONDITIONS¹

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Si aderit (adfuert), bene erit. | If he is (shall be, shall have been) here, it will be well. |
| 2. Si adsit, bene sit. | If he should be here, it would be well. |

(a) Notice that these conditional sentences both refer to Future time and therefore state the condition as Possible, rather than as a simple fact or one impliedly false. In the first sentence the Future (or Future Perfect) Indicative states the condition more vividly than the Present Subjunctive does in the second. The first sentence is called a *More Vivid Future Condition*, the second a *Less Vivid Future Condition*.

(b) In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Perfect Indicative is very common in the Protasis, as the Latin language is more precise than the English. We generally use the Present Indicative here to represent both the Future and the Future Perfect.

- 313** *Rule.*—In More Vivid Future Conditions the Future Indicative is used in both Protasis and Apodosis; in Less Vivid Future Conditions the Present Subjunctive.

W. 553, 555; B. 302, 303; AG. 307; H. 574, 576.

¹ The pupil will remember that conditional sentences with the Indicative have been freely used in many of the preceding exercises.

314

VOCABULARY

aequus, -a, -um, <i>equal, fair, level.</i>	nanciscor, -ī, nactus, <i>to find.</i>
aetās, -ātis, f. <i>age.</i>	necesse, adj. <i>necessary.</i>
dimitto, -ere, -misi, -missus (dī + mittō, 260), <i>to dismiss.</i>	nisi, conj. <i>unless.</i>
etsi, conj. <i>even if, although.</i>	pedester, -tris, -tre, <i>foot (pedes, 291).</i>
graviter, adv. <i>heavily, severely.</i>	pōnō, -ere, posui, positus, <i>to put, place.</i> ¹
Hispanus, -a, -um, <i>Spanish.</i>	propter, prep. with accu. <i>on account of.</i>
māne, adv. <i>early in the morning.</i>	rēgius, -a, -um, <i>royal.</i>
morior, -ī, mortuus, <i>to die.</i>	respondeō, -ēre, -ndi, -nsus, <i>to answer.</i>
	Scipio, -ōnis, m. <i>Scipio.</i>

- 315 1. Scipio olim magistratum quendam petivit, sed propter aetatem hunc habere ei non licuit. 2. "Si me," inquit, "omnes cives magistratum facere cupiunt, satis annorum habeo." 3. Scipio tanta virtute egit ut vitam patris ex hostium telis servaverit. 4. Nam pater graviter vulneratus erat, ut nisi eum Scipio celeriter periculo liberavisset, in hostium manus venisset mortuusque esset. 5. Ubi iuvenes quidam de re publica desperaverunt, Scipio respondit, "Si rei publicae deeritis, huius gladii virtutem experietis." 6. Si Scipio aequissimo loco mane castra posuerit, pedestribus copiis paene cotidie cum hostibus pugnabit. 7. Etsi ea natio non magna erat, tamen apud eos multa arma nonnullosque captivos nactus est imperator. 8. Erat inter captivos Hispanos puer regius insignisque, quocum² Scipio pauca loquebatur. 9. Scipio probavit ea quae puer dixit, atque ubi ei equum equitesque dedit qui eum tuto deducerent, domum dimi-

¹ castra pōnere, *to pitch camp.*

² cum is regularly attached to the abl. of the Personal and Relative Pronouns.

sit. 10. Si beātus esse cupīs, bonīs vītāe sapienter ūti et fruī necesse est.

- 316** 1. If Scipio had not acted with great haste, his father would have died in the hands of the enemy. 2. Scipio's father was so severely wounded that he almost died. 3. Scipio's years were not many; still he would receive from the citizens the magistracy if he should seek it. 4. "Unless you follow my advice and defend the state," said Scipio, "my sword will make¹ you drive the enemy out." 5. If the enemy be not terrified, they will pitch camp early in the morning in a level place. 6. Scipio persuaded the youth who was brought to him not to be afraid. 7. "My father died," said the boy, "so that I followed my mother's brother to the war." 8. If you should use and enjoy wisely the goods of life, you would be happy.

LESSON XL

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

PARADIGMS

317

	FIRST PERSON	SINGULAR SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM.	ego	tū	—
GEN.	meī	tui	sui
DAT.	mihi, mī	tibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

¹ efficiō with a substantive clause.

PLURAL

NOM. (VOC.)	nōs	vōs	—
GEN.	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī
DAT.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibī
ACCU.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
ABL.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

(a) The First and Second Personal Pronouns are used only for emphasis; **ego haec laudō, tū ista laudās, I praise this, you praise that.** Ordinarily the form of the verb alone indicates the subject in these two persons.

(b) **Nostrum** and **vestrum** usually denote the whole of which the modified word is a part: **quis nostrum? Who of us?** **Nostrī** and **vestrī** are generally used as Objective Genitives: **memōria nostrī, Memory of us.**

(c) There is properly speaking no Personal Pronoun of the Third Person. Its place is taken by the Demonstratives **ille** and **is** (123, 135).

(d) The Reflexive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons are supplied from the Personal Pronouns: **ego mē laudo, I praise myself; tū tē laudās, You praise yourself.**

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

meus, my	noster, our	for the First Person
tuus, your (thy)	vester, your	for the Second Person
suus, his own, their own		for the Third Person

(a) These are adjectives, which have been already used, and are declined like **bonus** and **niger**. But the Voc. Sing. Masc. of **meus** is **mī**.

(b) **Suus** is used only in a Reflexive sense, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands: **suum filium laudat, He praises his own son; filium illius laudat, He praises his (another man's) son.**

- 319 The following table shows the correspondence of the Personal, Reflexive, Possessive, and Demonstrative Pronouns.

	PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE	DEMONSTRATIVE
FIRST PERSON	ego	meī	meus, noster	hic
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui	tuus, vester	iste
THIRD PERSON	(ille, is)	sui	suus	ille

320

VOCABULARY

aut (aut . . . aut), conj. <i>either (either . . . or).</i>	iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus, to order. ²
dēsistō, -ere, -stītī, —, to cease, cease from, give up.	iūdicō, -āre, to judge, consider, (iūdex, 144.)
dignus -a, -um, worthy.	māgnitūdō, -inis, f. size, greatness.
Hasdrubal, -alis, m. Hasdrubal (a famous Carthaginian).	modo, adv. only.
idem, eadem, idem,¹ the same.	nē . . . quidem, adv. not even.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum,¹ self, very.	nōn modo . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.
iste, ista, istud,¹ that (of yours).	silentium, -ī, n. silence.

- 321 1. Multitūdō eadem Hispānōrum Scīpiōnem ingentī clāmōre rēgem appellāvit; sed ille nōn passus est sē regiō nōmine appellārī. 2. Postquam silentium eōs facere iussit, summā auctōritāte dīxit, “Nōmen imperātōris quō mē militēs mei appellāvērunt, mihī est māximus honor. 3. Rōmānī nē nōmen quidem regiū patī solent. Etsī vōs hōc nōmen māximum dīgnissimumque iūdicātis, tamen necesse est vōs³ etiam invītōs cōnsiliō dēsistere.”

¹ These are declined in full, 475. Compare with other demonstrative pronouns.

² Followed by the accu. and infin.: *iubeo tē haec facere, I order you to do this.* Compare *imperō, 191.*

³ Accu. subject of *dēsistere*; translate, *that you, etc.*

4. Tum sēnsērunt nōn modo illī sed etiam cēterī māgnitūdinem ēius animī, ut eum rēgem appellāre dēstiterint. 5. "Quot vestrum hōc animō sunt? Sī cōnsilium istud probārem, nōn dubitārem quīn nōmen illud accipere necesse esset." 6. Deinde Scīpiō proficīscī parābat, ut dūrō tempore annī māgnū agmen in Africam trādūceret. 7. Lēgatiōnem cum dōnīs ad rēgem mīsīt; sed nōn poterat¹ eī persuādere ut fidem, nisi cum ipsō dūce Rōmānō, aut daret aut acciperet. 8. Idem effēcīt ut eō tempore Hasdrubal ipse, quī Hispāniā expulsus erat, ad hunc portum pervenīret. 9. Numquam tuī oblīvīscar, etsī aetās mihī longissima sit.

- 322** 1. I should accept the name of king for love of you, if the Romans would allow me to do so. 2. Scipio ordered the Spaniards not to call him king against his wishes.² 3. Because the Spaniards recognized his nobility of spirit, they gave up their plan. 4. I do not approve of your plan; let them not call me by that name. 5. If he had not sent an embassy to the king, he not only would have come himself, but would also have given up the hostages. 6. If you wish to exchange³ pledges with me, it will be necessary for you to come yourself. 7. After a short silence, he said, "I shall not forget you, even if you forget me." 8. You are eager to adopt⁴ either that plan of yours or this of mine?⁵

323

READING EXERCISE

The Battles of Thermopylae and Salamis

Postquam Darēus dē pūgnā Marathōniā certior est factus, Graeciam vincere multō magis cupiēbat. Itaque per cīvitatēs Asiae lēgātōs mīsīt quī cōpiās et nāvīs longās

¹ Imperfect indic. of **possum**, to be able.

² **invītus**.

³ Use **dō** and **accipiō**; compare **321**, 7.

⁴ **capere**.

⁵ Simply **hīc**; compare **124** (a).

et equōs et frūmentum parārī iubērent. Sed mox Darēus moritur. Deinde Xerxēs rēgnat.¹ Quamquam² in animō nōn habēbat³ bellum Graeciae inferre,⁴ tamen Mardonius, cūius auctōritās apud eum erat māxima, eī persuāsit ut patris cōnsilia persequerētur.⁵ Per quattuor⁶ annōs māgnum exercitum omnīsq̄e rēs exercitui necessāriās parābat ut quīntō⁷ annō ingentibus cōpiīs proficīscerētur. Ubi rēx cum peditibus equitibusque ad Thermopylārū⁸ angustias⁹ pervēnit, castra ante eas pōnere est coāctus, quod in angustīs erant Graeci, quī parātī erant prohibēre eum suōs militēs in Graeciam dūcere. Cēterī Graeci, māgnō numerō hostium perterritī,¹⁰ ex angustīs fugere et Isthmum mūnīre cupiēbant; sed Leōnidas hanc sententiam nōn probābat, et cum Lacedaemoniīs suis manēbat.

Ubi nōnnūllōs diēs rēx morātus est, suōs militēs impetum facere iussit. Quamquam summā audāciā pūgnāvērunt, tamen tanta erat caedēs eōrum ut dēnique proeliō dēstiterint ac sē in castra recēperint. Neque reliquī plūs contrā Graecōs effēcērunt. Ubi iam dē victōriā Xerxēs dēspērābat, eī Graecus quīdam viam per montēs indicāvit. Eā nocte Persae profectī sunt ut Graecōs ā tergō¹¹ adorīrentur.¹² Leōnidas omnīs praeter¹³ Lacedaemoniōs dīmīserat. Primā lūce Persae in eōs impetum fēcērunt: parva manus Graecōrum fortissimē pūg-

¹ The present indicative is often thus used in narration to record incidents as they occur. It is best known as the Annalistic Present.

² *Although.*

³ Compare **in animō esse**, 193, 6.

⁴ *Infin., to bring on*, with dat.

⁵ **persequor**, *to follow out.*

⁶ *Four.*

⁷ *Fifth.*

⁸ **Thermopylae**, a pass from Thessaly to southern Greece.

⁹ **angustiae**, *pass.*

¹⁰ *Perf. pass. partic., not indic.*

¹¹ *In the rear.*

¹² **adorior**, **-irī**, *to attack.*

¹³ *Prep. with accu., except.*

nāvit, sed omnēs occīsī sunt. Hīc in ūnō locō sepultī,¹ semper in māmō honōre apud suōs erant.

Paulō post apud Salamīnem² pūgnam nāvālem³ cum classe Persicā commīsērunt Graecī, quī cōsiliō Themistoclis⁴ hōc locō dīmīcāre coāctī sunt. Multī enim ā Salamīne ad Isthmum fugere in animō habuerant. Māior pars nāvium Persārū interīit;⁵ multae ab Athēniēnsibus sociisque sunt captae. Ita Graecia est liberāta.

LESSON XLI

THE USES OF THE INFINITIVE

324 REVIEW the Present Infinitives and learn the Perfect and Future Infinitives of the model verbs (479–485).

(a) Notice that the Future Active Infinitive is made up of the Future Active Participle and *esse*; the Perfect Passive of the Perfect Passive Participle and *esse*. These participles, it should be remembered, are declined like *bonus*.

325 SUBJECT AND OBJECT INFINITIVES

The Infinitive in Latin, as in English, is a Verbal Noun and has neither person nor number. It is chiefly used as Subject or Object.

¹ Perf. pass. partic. of *sepeliō*, to bury.

² *Salamis*, -īnis, an island south of Athens.

³ *nāvālis*, -e, compare *nāvis*.

⁴ *Themistoclē*s, -is, the famous Athenian general.

⁵ *Was lost*.

326

EXAMPLES

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Urbem dēfendere erit periculōsum. | <i>To defend the city will be dangerous.</i> |
| 2. Urbem mūnīre cupit. | <i>He wishes to defend the city.</i> |
| 3. Urbem mūnīrī cupit. | <i>He wishes the town to be defended.</i> |
| 4. Urbem esse māgnam cupit. | <i>He wishes the city to be large.</i> |
| 5. Urbs māgna esse dīcitur. | <i>The city is said to be large.</i> |
| 6. Urbs dēfēnsa esse dīcitur. | <i>The city is said to have been defended.</i> |

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 the Infinitive is the Subject of **erit**; in 2, 3, and 4 it is the Object of **cupit**; and that in 5 and 6 it simply completes the meaning of the sentence. Such infinitives as those in sentences 2-6 are frequently called *Complementary Infinitives*, especially when, as in sentence 2, the infinitive has no subject. All these constructions are common in English, so that they have been freely used in the preceding lessons.

(b) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 the accusative **urbem** is the Subject of the infinitives, and that in sentence 4 the predicate adjective **māgnam** is therefore accusative. But in sentences 5 and 6, in which the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the finite verb and therefore nominative, the predicate adjective **māgna** and the participle **dēfēnsa** are nominative.

- 327 **Rule.**—The Infinitive may be used as Subject or Object of a Finite Verb.

W. 622-629; B. 326-332; AG. 270-272; H. 613-615.

- 328 **Rule.**—The Accusative may be used as the Subject of an Infinitive.

W. 322; B. 184; AG. 240, *f.*; H. 415.

329

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

EXAMPLES

DIRECT

INDIRECT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Tū urbem dēfendis.
<i>You are defending the city.</i> | Dicit tē urbem dēfendere.
<i>He says that you are defending the city.</i> |
| 2. Ego urbem dēfendī.
<i>I defended the city.</i> | Dixit mē urbem dēfendisse.
<i>He said that I defended the city.</i> |
| 3. Urbs dēfēnsa est.
<i>The city has been defended.</i> | Dixit urbem dēfēnsam esse.
<i>He said that the city had been defended.</i> |
| 4. Urbem dēfendēbat.
<i>He was defending the city.</i> | Dicit sē urbem dēfendisse.
<i>He says that he defended the city.</i> |
| 5. Hic urbem dēfendet.
<i>This man will defend the city.</i> | Dixit hunc urbem dēfēnsū esse.
<i>He said that this man would defend the city.</i> |

(a) Notice that in these sentences the Infinitives with Subjects in the Accusative are Objects of the introductory verb, but at the same time represent the quoted thought or words of some person, as is shown by the left-hand column. When a person's thought or words are thus quoted after a verb of Saying or Thinking, the construction is called *Indirect Discourse*. Compare 326, 5 and 6.

(b) The Tenses of the Infinitive have no independent time of their own, but their time depends on that of the leading verb, as is shown by the examples given above.

- 330** *Rule.*—The Present Infinitive expresses the same time as that of the leading verb, the Perfect Infinitive time before, and the Future Infinitive time after the time of the leading verb.

W. 632-635; B. 270 a-c; AG. 288; H. 617-620.

331

VOCABULARY

alius , -a, -ud, <i>another</i> . ¹	procul , adv. <i>far off</i> .
arbitror , -ārī, -ātus, <i>to think</i> .	prōgredior , -ī, -gressus, <i>to advance</i> .
centuriō , -ōnis, m. <i>centurion</i> .	putō , -āre, <i>to think</i> .
circum , prep. with accu. <i>around, about</i> .	quisquam , —, quidquam , indefinite pron. <i>any one, anything</i> . ²
cōstituō , -ere, -stitūī, -stitūtus, <i>to establish, place, station, determine</i> .	sōl , -is, m. <i>sun</i> .
difficultās , -ātis, f. <i>difficulty</i> (<i>difficilis</i> , 196).	spērō , -āre, <i>to hope</i> .
imperitus , -a, -um (in + peritus, 264), <i>unskilled</i> .	Suēbī , -ōrum, m. <i>The Suebi</i> (a German people).
iniquus , -a, -um (in + aequus, 314), <i>unequal, uneven, unfair</i> .	suprā , adv., and prep. with accu. <i>above, beyond</i> .
paulum , adv. <i>a little, somewhat</i> (paulō, 199).	tālis , -e, <i>such</i> .
	tollō , -ere, sustulī, sublātus, <i>to lift up, carry off, remove, destroy</i> .

- 332** 1. Ipse Caesar cōpiās pedestrīs in Germaniam dūcere castraque pōnere cōstituit paulō suprā eum locum ubi antea peditēs trādūxerat. 2. Arbitrābātur hostīs, imperītōs hominēs, aut iniquō locō proelium commissūrōs aut dē victōriā dēspērātūrōs esse. 3. Hōc modō spērābat sē castrīs eōrum argentōque omnī potītūrum esse. 4. Sōl occultātus erat nūbibus ut periculōsum difficileque esse putāret tālī caelō proficīscī; sed primōs ordinēs paulum prōgredī iussit. 5. Mōs hārum civitātum fuisse dicitur, ut circum sē finīs vastātōs vacuōsque ab incolīs habērent; hōc modō sē tūtiorēs esse arbitrābantur. 6. Caesar, simul atque certior factus est Suēbōs iniquō locō bellum committere nōn audēre, longius prōgredī cōstituit. 7. Nē timōrem barbarīs tolleret, turrim nōn procul ā ripā cōn-

¹ Declined in full, 469.

² For the declension, see 478. **Quisquam** is used in negative sentences and in questions; compare 332, 9.

stituit, centuriōnem quendam turri castrisque praefecit. 8. Postquam ipse peditēs plērōsque incolumis redūxit, ad alium bellum profectus est. Arbitrābatur illōs supplicī nōn oblītūrōs esse. 9. Ista silva est sacra deīs; neque est quisquam quī sē ad finem eius umquam pervēnisse dicat aut magnitudinem eius cōgnōverit. 10. Sī pontem nōn incendisset, barbarī arbitrātī essent eum in Germaniam prōgressūrum esse atque perterritī essent.

- 333** 1. It is a dangerous and difficult matter to follow the Suebi into such a forest. 2. He thought that the centurion had erected a tower not far from the bridge. 3. The Suebi had determined to betake themselves into the forest, nor was there any one who knew their plan. 4. If the sun had not been hidden by clouds, he would have set out on that day. 5. A little way above the bridge was a very large forest, in which there were many strange animals; this forest is said to have been sacred to the gods. 6. Caesar was informed that the Suebi would neither engage in battle nor stay where they were.¹ 7. If you wish to destroy all fear and to enjoy² quiet, you must lay waste the country about your cities.

LESSON XLII

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

334

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

EXAMPLES

DIRECT

1. Quid facit?

INDIRECT

Rogat quid faciat.
He asks what he is doing.
Rogāvit quid faceret.
He asked what he was doing.

¹ Translate, *in the same place.*

² ūtī.

2. Cūr proficiscēbātur?

Rogāvit cūr proficiscerētur.

He asked why he started.

3. Ubi vēnit?

{	Sciō ubi vēnerit.
	<i>I know when he came.</i>
	Sciēbam ubi vēnisset.
	<i>I knew when he came.</i>

(a) Notice that the verbs of the direct questions in the left-hand column when quoted in the right become the Subjunctive. The Sequence of Tenses is similar to that of other subordinate clauses, 248 *b, c*. In general all questions and all subordinate clauses when quoted have their verbs in the Subjunctive.

335 *Rule.*—In Indirect Discourse the verb of a Declarative sentence is in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative; the verb of an Interrogative, Hortatory, or Imperative Sentence, or of a Subordinate clause is in the Subjunctive.

W. 599, 605; B. 314, 315; AG. 336; H. 642, 643.

CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

EXAMPLES

336 SIMPLE PRESENT OR PAST CONDITIONS¹

1. DIRECT. Si haec facis, bene facis.
- INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, si haec { faciās, } bene facere.
Dixit } { facerēs, }
2. DIRECT. Si haec fecistī, bene fecistī.
- INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, si haec { fēcērīs, } bene fēcisse.
Dixit } { fēcissēs, }

337 FUTURE CONDITIONS

3. DIRECT. Si haec { faciēs, } bene { faciēs.
{ faciās, } { faciās.
- INDIRECT. Dicit } tē, si haec { faciās, } bene factūrum esse.
Dixit } { facerēs, }

¹ Present and Past Conditions Contrary to Fact are not frequent in Indirect Discourse and are not treated here.

(a) Notice that the verb of the Apodosis of a conditional sentence, being independent, is changed to the Infinitive in Indirect Discourse; the verb of the Protasis, being dependent, is changed to the Subjunctive, following the regular sequence of tenses.

(b) Notice also that Protases of the Simple Present and the More and the Less Vivid Future Conditions have the same Subjunctive form when quoted. The Tense of the Infinitive in the Apodosis shows in part what kind of condition was used in the Direct Discourse; but there is no way of distinguishing between the two classes of Future Conditions when quoted, except by the context.

338

VOCABULARY

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, to withdraw, yield.

conveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventūrus (con + veniō, 276), to come together, assemble.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), to go away, depart.

domus, -ūs, f. house, home.¹

existimō, -āre, to think.

fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctus, to perceive, understand.

nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.²

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f. attack, assault, siege (oppūgnō, 111).

ostendō, -ere, -ndī, -ntus, to show.

pīlum, -ī, n. javelin.

quaerō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, to ask, enquire.

revertor, revertī, reversus, to return.³

salūs, -ūtis, f. safety, life.

undique, adv. from all sides.

339

1. Centuriō existimāvit, sī tāli tempore oppūgnātiōne dēsisteret, hostīs aut cōpiās dēductūros aut aedifi-

¹ See 465. The accu. without a preposition is used as the limit of motion like names of towns.

² Declined in full, 469.

³ Usually deponent in the present system; in the perfect system the active *revertī* is used.

cia Rōmānōrum incēnsūrōs esse. 2. Nūntium rogāvit cūr tam tristis esset. Respondit ille hostīs undique convēnisse, hastīs pilisque armātōs, neque procul abesse. 3. Caesar, nē caedēs māgna esset, silentiō māne revertī cōstituit; nē ūnum quidem diem mānserat. 4. Ipse dux certior factus est hostīs iam discessisse, neque quisquam sciēbat ubi essent. Exīstimābat Caesar eōs mediam in prōvinciam profectōs esse. 5. Arbitrābātur, sī tālī tempore sōl nūbibus occultārētur, imperitōs hominēs dē salūte dēspērātūrōs et oppugnātiōne dēstitūrōs esse. 6. In tantā difficultāte dīxit eīs, sī locō nōn cēderent, sē eōs incolumīs domum dēductūrum esse. 7. Sī sentient necesse esse morī, māiōre fortitūdine bellī fortūnam experientur et sē fortiōrēs ostendent. 8. Quaesīvit ab eīs quam ob rem māne prōgressī essent. Respondērunt sē bellī fortūnam secundā hōrā experīrī cupīvisse. 9. Caesar intellēxit nisi locum nātūrā mūnītum nancīscerentur, eōs numquam proelium commissūros esse.

- 340** 1. He asked the messenger where the enemy were and why they had determined to return. 2. He thought that, if he returned, the enemy would advance and try the fortune of war. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy had gathered from all sides and would attack the tower if Caesar should fall back from his position. 4. You ask why I wish to give up¹ the attack. I think it will be dangerous to stay here, if the enemy do not withdraw. 5. He told them that, if they should show themselves brave men, they need not despair of victory and safety. 6. Not to deprive² them altogether of hope, he says that if they withdraw quickly, they will reach³ home in safety. 7. He asks how many miles distant the enemy are from the camp and how large an army they have.

¹ dēsistō.

² tollō.

³ revertor.

READING EXERCISE

Roman History from 60 B. C.

Quartō annō post coniūratiōnem Catilīnae Gāius Iūlius Caesar cum Lūciō Bibulō cōsul est factus. Datae eī sunt in quīnquennium prōvinciae, Gallia et Illyricum, deinde in alterum quīnquennium prōrogatae. Pācāvit autem annīs novem paene omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est. Bis milītēs Rhēnum trādūxit Germānōsque in ultimās regiōnēs sē recipere coēgit; bis etiam trāsgressus est in Brittaniam, quod inde Gallīs auxilia missa erant, victorque in prōvinciam revertit. Septimō ex quō Caesar in Galliam vēnerat annō gravis oritur sēditiō; paene omnēs Gallī, quōrum Vercingetorix erat dux, contrā Rōmānōs coniūrānt. Sed Caesar Alesiam, quō sē hostēs recēperant, expūgnāvit et tōtam Galliam gravibus suppliciīs pācāvit. Interim cum Pompēiō et Crassō societātem illam rei pūblicae periculōsam renovāvit. Pompēiō etiam filiam Iūliam Caesar in mātirimōnium dedit, ut eum sibi adiungeret; sed illa iam alterō annō moritur. Crassus, cui post cōsulātum quem cum Pompēiō gesserat, data est Syria et bellum Parthicum, ad Carrās, Mesopotamiae oppidum, ā dūce Parthōrum victus et interfectus est. Mox inimicī erant Caesar et Pompēius: huic illius opēs suspectae erant, illum hūius auctōritās grātiaque apud nōbilis sollicitābant.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY¹

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-	Carrae, -ārum, f. Carrae.
tus, to join to, attach.	cōsulātus, -ūs, m. consul-
alter, -era, -erum, other, second.	ship.
bis, adv. twice.	inde, adv. from that place.
	mātirimōnium, -ī, n. marriage.

¹ Proper names are not ordinarily given in the vocabularies to the reading exercises, unless they present some difficulties.

nōbilis, -e, *noble*.

novem, (indeclin.) *nine*.

opēs, -um, f. plur. *power*.

orior, -īrī, -ortus, *to arise*.

Parthicus, -a, -um, *Parthian*.

prōrogō, -āre, *to extend*.

quīnquennium, -ī, n. *five years*.

renovō, -āre, *to renew*.

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine*.

Rhodanus, -ī, m. *the Rhone*.

sēditio, -ōnis, f. *uprising*.

societās, -ātis, f. *alliance*.

suspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectus, *to suspect*.

trānsgridior, -ī, -gressus, *to cross*.

LESSON XLIII

THE COMPOUNDS OF SUM

342 THE only compounds of **sum** which present any peculiarities are **possum**, *can, be able*, and **prōsum**, *to be of advantage to, to help*. Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive entire of these verbs (486).

(a) **Possum** is a compound of **potis**, *able*, and **sum**; therefore the **t** appears everywhere before a vowel, e. g., **potest**, **poteram**, etc. **Prōsum** is compounded of **prōd** (an old form of **prō**) and **sum**.

343

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

1. **Peditibus occurrit.** *He met the infantry.*
2. **Equitātui praefuit.** *He was in charge of the cavalry.*
3. **Equitātui praefectus est.** *He has been put in command of the cavalry.*
4. **Haec tibi prōderunt.** *These things will be to your advantage.*

(a) Notice that the Dative, not the Accusative, is used with these Verbs Compounded with the preposi-

tions **ob**, **prae**, and **prō**. Many compound Latin verbs are intransitive and have the Dative depending on them thus ; but their English equivalents are often transitive.

- 344** *Rule.*—The Dative is used with many verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, and *super*.

W. 332; B. 187, iii; AG. 228; H. 429.

345

VOCABULARY

cōsistō, -ere, -stiti, —, *to* **praesum**, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *stand, halt.* *to be in command of.*

fossa, -ae, f. *ditch.*

(Compare **praeſciō**, 283).

interim, adv. *meanwhile.*

profectiō, -ōnis, f. *departure* (**proficiscor**, 298).

occurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursū-

rus, *to go to meet, resist.*

prōpōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus (**prō** + **pōnō**, 314), *to*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. *speech.*¹

set forth, tell, offer.

orior, -iri, **ortus**, *to arise.*

peditātus, -ūs, m. *foot-soldiers, infantry* (**pedes**, 291).

quō, adv. *whither, to which place.*

polliceor, -ēri, -itus, *to promise.*

tandem, adv. *at last, finally.*
vēlōciter, adv. *swiftly.*

346

1. Ille lēgātus, quī peditātui praefuit, cōstitit nōn procul ā classe, et māgnā vōce apud imperitam et egen-tem multitudinem ōrātiōnem habuit. 2. Deinde quibusdam prōposuit quō hostēs prōgrederentur et quot convēnissent; hortābātur ut eōs cōsequerentur et ostendit vīctōriam suis prōfutūram esse. 3. Pollicētur sē eīs multum etiam argentum datūrum esse, quō fruantur quōque aedificia domōsque faciant. 4. Centuriōnem quendam multitudinī praefēcit, āc iussit eum hastis pilisque eōs armāre; postquam sōl ortus est, silentiō peditātum praemittit. 5. Arbitrābātur eōs, sī vēlōciter prōgrederentur, exercitum cui Quīntus praeesset cōsequī posse. 6. Secundā hōrā hostēs, nullō certō ordine profecti, effēcē-

¹ ōrātiōnem habēre, *to make a speech.*

runt ut similis fugae profectiō vidērētur. 7. Interim nōnnūllī convēnērunt et vacua ab militibus aedificia esse audīvērunt; statim clāmōrem ingentem tollunt et prōgrediuntur. 8. Propter altitudinem fossae, peditātus cui centuriō praeerat neque sequī neque revertī poterat. 9. Quaesīvit ab eīs cūr aut dē suā salūte aut dē ipsius diligentīā dēspērārent. Post hanc ōrātiōnem vėlōciter hostibus occurrērunt. 10. Tandem coniugibus hostium sīgnisque potītī sunt et domum discessērunt nē inīquam condiōnem experīrentur.

- 347** 1. The infantry, of which Labienus was in charge, halted not far from the ditch. 2. Caesar put Labienus in charge of the infantry, which then went to meet¹ the army. 3. He promises that he will lead them off home, if they show themselves brave men. 4. They were able neither to advance nor to retreat, and it was of no avail to them to have found out the enemy's plans. 5. He asked them why they had not set out and gone to meet the enemy. 6. In the meantime the sun rose; he delivered a speech in which he told them where his brother had gone. 7. That their departure might not have the appearance of flight, they advanced with a shout and showed their spears. 8. If Caesar had been in charge of those troops, they would not have despaired of their lives² and returned home.

LESSON XLIV

VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ

- 348** LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitives of *volō*, *to wish*, *nōlō*, *to be unwilling*, and *mālō*, *to prefer* (487).

¹ One word.

² *salūs*.

(a) **Nōlō** is compounded of **nē**, *not*, and **volō**; **mālō** of the stem of **magis**, *more*, and **volō**.

(b) Notice that the Present Indicative, and the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are the only tenses in which any irregular forms appear. None of these verbs has a Future Infinitive.

(c) These verbs are all followed by the Complementary or Object Infinitive.

349

VOCABULARY

adorior , -īrī, -ortus (ad + orior, 345), <i>to rise up against, attack, assault.</i>	militāris , -e, <i>pertaining to war (miles, 142).</i>
alter , altera, alterum, <i>the other of two (469).</i> (Compare alius , 331.)	omnīnō , adv. <i>altogether, wholly.</i>
dēbeō , -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, <i>to owe, ought.</i>	patior , -ī, passus, <i>to suffer, allow.</i>
ferē , adv. <i>almost.</i> ¹	prope , adv. and prep. with accu. <i>near.</i>
imprōvisō , adv. <i>suddenly, unexpectedly.</i>	quantus , -a, -um, <i>how great, as great as.</i> ²
intermittō , -ere, -misī, -missus, <i>to stop, interrupt, let pass.</i>	quisque , quaeque, quidque, <i>each one.</i> ³
	subsidiū , -ī, n. <i>reserve, aid.</i>

- 350 1. Centuriō, quī peditātūī praeerat, subsidium ad Caesarem mittere volēbat, sed imperītus reī militāris⁴ erat. 2. Alium ducem peditātūī praeficere nōlēbat Caesar nē omnīnō timidīs hominibus⁵ spem salūtis tolleret. 3. Cae-

¹ Used chiefly with numerals and negative adjectives and adverbs; **paene**, 305, is of wider application and is found with verbs as well.

² Frequently used as a correlative with **tantus**, 252: **tantam multitudinem interfēcērunt quantum diēi tempus est passum.** *They killed as great a number as the time allowed.*

³ Declined in full, 478.

⁴ **rēs militāris**, *science of war.*

⁵ Translate *from*.

sar cōpiās pedestrīs ā labōre revocāvit atque hostīs secūtus est quantum diēi tempus est passum, ut alterō diē māne eīs occurreret. 4. Māluit imperitum dūcem classī praeesse quam alium in tantā difficultāte praefici, quod hostīs imprōvisō adoriri voluit. 5. Arborēs māgnā altitūdine prope classem erant; caelum nūbibus occultābātur ut nostrī ab hostibus neque audiri neque vidēri possent. 6. Cōnfidēbat, sī pecūniam eīs pollicērētur, sē ab eīs impetrātūrum esse ut domōs finitimōrum incenderent et sē sequerentur. 7. Nūllum ferē diem intermittēbant quīn pedestrī proeliō experirentur quid in quōque animi esset; ac paene cotīdiē decem mīlium passuum iter facere solēbant. 8. Nōn intellegō utrum cōnsilium probēs, neque quisquam est quī sē iūdicāre posse dicat. 9. Nisi fossā essēmus impedītī quīn hostibus vėlōciter occurrissēmus, numquam morātī essēmus. 10. Nōn modo bonam fortūnam spērāre dēbēs, sed etiam malam cum fortitūdine experiri. Beātus ille, cui pauca satis sunt !

- 351** 1. On the second day Caesar wished to advance swiftly, in order that he might attack the enemy unexpectedly. 2. The soldiers allowed hardly a day to pass¹ without advancing many miles. 3. They preferred to do this rather than² to be defeated in battle line. 4. As long as the time of day allowed, they followed the enemy, for Caesar had promised them much money. 5. They were unwilling to leave the fleet before midnight, for fear they should be seen or heard. 6. He does not doubt that if he places another in charge of the infantry, the soldiers will despair of their lives. 7. Caesar wished to set out early the next day, in order to engage the enemy.

¹ Compare 350, 7.

² quam.

The Beginning of Civil War (52-48 B. C.)

Itaque Pompēius, postquam cōsul sine collēgā creātus est, lēgem tulit¹ nē cui absentī cōsulātum petere licēret, quā lēge plēbiscītum abrogāvit, quō paulō ante Caesarī permissum erat ut absēns alterum cōsulātum peteret; atque inimicī Caesaris senātuī persuāsērunt ut ante tempus ex Galliā revocārētur. Tum Caesar suōs militēs est hortātus ut imperātorem cuius ductū² tot annīs plūrima proelia secunda fēcissent finisque imperī Rōmānī auxissent, ab inimicīs dēfenderent, et trāns Rubicōnem, quod flūmen est inter Galliam Cisalpīnam³ et Ītaliā, contendit. Cōsulēs senātusque omnis cum Pompēiō ex urbe et ex Ītaliā in Graeciam fūgērunt, ubi bellum contrā Caesarem parāvērunt. Is vacuā urbe aerāriōque potitus est et dictātorem sē fēcit. Inde Hispāniās⁴ petiit: ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs fortissimōsque cum dūcibus superāvit, sed militēs omnīs incolumīs dīmīsit. Deinde postquam Massiliam expūgnāvit, Rōmam rediit⁵ et cōsul creātus est cum Publiō Serviliō. Mox in Graeciam profectus est ut contrā Pompēium dīmīcāret. Prīmō proeliō vīctus est et fugātus; sed nōn est captus quod Pompēius noctū sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompēium scīre vincere ac sē effectūrum esse ut postea numquam superārī posset.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

abrogō, -āre, <i>to abrogate,</i>	aerārium, -ī, <i>n. treasury.</i>
<i>abolish.</i>	Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, <i>this side</i>
absēns, <i>absent.</i>	<i>the Alps.</i>

¹ Perf. indic. act. of **ferō**, *to carry*; with **lēgem**, *to have a law passed*.

² *Under whose leadership.*

³ Roughly that portion of northern Italy which is included in the modern Piedmont, Lombardy, and Emilia.

⁴ Spain was at this time divided into two provinces.

⁵ *Returned.*

<i>collēga</i> , -ae, m. <i>colleague</i> .	<i>lēx</i> , <i>lēgis</i> , f. <i>law</i> .
<i>cōsulātus</i> , -ūs, m. <i>consulship</i> .	<i>nē quis</i> , <i>that not . . . any one</i> (478).
<i>creō</i> , -āre, <i>to elect</i> .	<i>noctū</i> , adv. <i>by night</i> .
<i>dictātor</i> , -ōris, m. <i>dictator</i> .	<i>permittō</i> , -ere, -mīsi, -missus (per + mittō), <i>to allow, entrust</i> .
<i>dīmittō</i> , -ere, -mīsi, -missus (dī + mittō), <i>to send away</i> .	
<i>ductus</i> , -ūs, m. <i>leadership</i> (<i>dux</i>).	<i>plēbiscitum</i> , -ī, n. <i>vote of the people</i> .

LESSON XLV

COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

353 LEARN the Imperatives of all the paradigms 479–486, and of *nōlō*, 487. The pres. imper. sing. of *dīco*, *dūcō*, *faciō*, and *ferō*¹ are *dīc*, *dūc*, *fac*, and *fer*; their other imperative forms are regular.

354

EXAMPLES

1. *Haec laudā.* *Praise these things.*
2. *Nōlī haec laudāre.* *Don't praise these things.*
3. *Cavē nē haec laudēs.* *Take care not to praise these things.*
4. *Fac (vidē) nē haec laudēs.* *See that you do not praise these things.*

(a) The first example illustrates the common way of expressing a Command or Request in the second person;² in the first and third persons, and sometimes in

¹ The full conjugation of this verb will be given later.

² The future imperative is rare, being only used in sentences stating an expected result or in formal language, laws, etc.

the second, the Hortatory or Jussive Subjunctive is used, 239.

(b) The second example illustrates the most common way of expressing a Prohibition in the second person; sometimes the imperatives *cavē*, *beware*, *fac* or *vidē*, *see to it*, followed by *nē* and the present subjunctive, are used as in 3 and 4.

(c) For prohibitions in the first and third persons, the Hortatory Subjunctive is used, 239.

355 *Rule.*—The Imperative states the action of the verb as a Command or Request.

W. 495; B. 281; AG. 269; H. 560.

356 *Rule.*—Prohibitions are regularly expressed by *nōlī* (*nōlīte*) with the Infinitive; sometimes by *cavē*, *fac* or *vidē*, with *nē* and the present subjunctive.

W. 496, 1.3; B. 276, c; AG. 269, a, 2.3; H. 561.

357

VOCABULARY

<i>caveō</i> , -ēre, <i>cāvī</i> , <i>cautus</i> , <i>to be on one's guard, take care not.</i>	<i>incertus</i> , -a, -um (<i>in + certus</i> , 192), <i>uncertain.</i>
<i>complūrēs</i> , -ia or -a (<i>gen. -ium</i>), <i>several.</i>	<i>instituō</i> , -ere, -uī, -ūtus, <i>to begin.</i>
<i>cōnficiō</i> , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (<i>con + faciō</i> , 272), <i>to complete, finish, weaken.</i>	<i>mercātor</i> , -ōris, <i>m. trader.</i>
<i>dēfessus</i> , -a, -um, <i>tired out.</i>	<i>opus</i> , -eris, <i>n. work.</i>
<i>excitō</i> , -āre, <i>to arouse.</i>	<i>quamquam</i> , conj. <i>although, and yet.</i> ¹
<i>facultās</i> , -ātis, <i>f. opportunity.</i>	<i>quidem</i> , adv. <i>at least, in fact, etc.</i>
	<i>voluntās</i> , -ātis, <i>f. will, wish.</i>

358 1. *Habētis, militēs, facultātem quam voluistis; inīquō locō et imprōvisō adorīminī hostis, nōlīte cēdere.* 2. *Nōlīte ūnam quidem hōram opus intermittere; dūcem ipsum audīre haec et vidēre exīstimāte; subsidium mit-*

¹ Used with the Indicative.

tite. 3. Vidēte nē locō cēdātis; multam vōbīs pecūniam prōpōnō et hanc mē vōbīs datūrum esse polliceor, sī hostīs cōnsequāminī. 4. Opus cōficiāmus; tēla, hastās pilaque, expediāmus; insīgnis erit vōbīs glōria, si hostīs premētis. 5. Cōstitērunt milītēs et ad opus discessērunt; quisque alterō diē cōgnōscere voluit quō hostēs sē recēpissent. 6. “Arborēs portāte ut castra mūniātis.” Hāc ōrātiōne mōtī milītēs, quamquam dēfessī erant, sē ex quiete excitāvērunt et opus instituērunt. 7. Aliae¹ gentēs equīs māgnoperē dēlectantur, aliae eōs sacrōs habent; ad hanc gentem ab mercātōribus portantur. 8. Germānī complūrēs annōs ā Suēbīs premēbantur; hī nihil omnīnō contrā suam voluntātem facere solēbant. 9. Cavē nē existimēs eōs domum reversūrōs esse; spērō et cōfidō eōs revertisse, sed incertum est. 10. Nōn imperītī rei milītāris sunt; paene cotidiānīs proeliīs contendere mālēbant quam pāce fruī.

- 359** 1. Halt, soldiers, and pitch camp; see that the enemy do not attack you unexpectedly. 2. Do not desist from the work; believe that Caesar sees all that you do. 3. The opportunity that you desired is here; be brave men; fight as long as the time of day will allow.² 4. It was uncertain which of the two plans Caesar approved; but the soldiers preferred to fight. 5. Although they were tired, they set to work as soon as the sun had risen. 6. They were nearly all aroused by this speech, nor was there anyone who did not wish to meet the enemy. 7. They never did anything which they did not wish to do;³ still they were skilled in military matters. 8. They asked the traders, of whom there were several present, what they brought.

¹ *aliae . . . aliae, some . . . others.*

² Compare 350, 3.

³ *voluntās*; compare 358, 8.

LESSON XLVI

THE VERBS EŌ AND FĪŌ

eō, īre, (īvī) ii, itūrus, *to go*.

- 360** LEARN the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) The stem is -i-; this appears as -e- in the forms eō, eunt, euntō, and in the present subjunctive throughout.

fīō, fierī, factus, *to be made, become*.

- 361** Learn the Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative, and Infinitives, 488.

(a) Notice that the i is long except in the form fit and when followed by -er.

(b) Fīō is the passive of faciō; but compounds of faciō which, like efficiō, change the a to i have regular passives, e. g., efficior, effici, effectus.

362

VOCABULARY

adulēscēns, -ntis, m. and f. <i>young man or woman</i> .	noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, <i>to harm</i> . ²
circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven- tus (circum + veniō, 276), <i>to surround</i> .	noctū, adv. <i>by night</i> (nox). nōndum, adv. <i>not yet</i> .
coepī, -isse, coeptus, <i>to be- gin</i> . ¹	opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres- sus (ob + premō, 291), <i>to overwhelm</i> .
ēdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctus (ē + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead forth</i> .	permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (per + mittō, 260), <i>to yield, surrender, permit</i> .
expeditus, -a, -um, <i>lightly burdened, unincumbered</i> (expediō, 283).	prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, cessūrus (prō + cēdō, 338), <i>to ad- vance</i> .
latus, -eris, n. <i>side, flank</i> .	

¹ The present system is supplied by inciπō, -ere.

² Used with the dative.

363 1. Eōsdem quōs in fugā esse arbitrābantur, ad sē ire vīdērunt; itaque ipsī fugere coepērunt. 2. Fīēbat ut clāmor post tergum tollerētur. Tum undique convēnērunt hostēs et nostrōs ab latere sinistrō adortī, circumvērunt. 3. Interim adulēscētem quendam praemīsīt, quī eōs māgnoperē hortārētur nē longius tālī tempore prōcēderent. 4. Sōl iam ortus erat, sed eī quī, ut hostīs opprimerent, trāns fossam ierant, nōndum reverterant. 5. Nōlīte fugā salūtem petere; prīmum cōsistite, deinde contrā hostīs vēlōciter īte; sic spērō vōs servārī posse. 6. Etsī propter altitūdinem flūminis erat summa difficultās, tamen cōpiās pedestrīs noctū trādūcere coepit. 7. Caesar postquam quid ā quōque fierī velīt ostendit, legiōnēs expeditās ēdūcit; statim sē suaque omnia potestātī eius permīsērunt hostēs. 8. Haec ad sē portārī ab mercātōribus Germānī nōn patiuntur, quod ea sibi nocēre exīstīmant. 9. Ūnā nocte Germānī eōs vulneribus dolōreque cōfectōs adortī omnīs oppressērunt. 10. Hīc est Gallōrum mōs, ut mercātōrēs, etiam invītōs, cōsistere cōgant, et quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit, quaerant.

364 1. Caesar ordered them first to make camp, then to go against the enemy. 2. He showed what he wished to be done by each man, that they might not be surrounded and attacked on all sides. 3. Finish the work which you have begun; do not surrender yourselves and all your possessions to them. 4. The Germans thought that many things which the traders brought injured them. 5. Therefore some tribes did not allow the traders to go to them, but used what they themselves had. 6. The storming of the town was so difficult for the right flank that nearly everybody was killed. 7. They would have begun to march early, if there had not been the greatest difficulty on account of their baggage.

The Civil Wars (continued)

Deinde in Thessaliā ad¹ Pharsālum ingentibus cōpiis diū dimicātum est. Postrēmō victus est Pompēius: ipse fugātus² Alexandrēam petiit ut ā rēge Aegypti acciperet auxilia. Sed hīc fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus³ occīdit Pompēium et caput eius ad Caesarem mīsīt; quī, ubi caput tantī virī et generī quondam suī vīdit, etiam lacrimās fūdisse dicitur.

Mox Caesar Alexandrēam⁴ vēnit. Ipsum quoque Ptolemaeus conātus est interficere; itaque rēgī bellum illātum est,⁵ quī victus in Nilō moritur. Caesar Alexandrēā potītus,³ rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorōri. Deinde Pharnacem quī ad Pompēium in Graeciam auxilium mīserat, aciē vīcit; postea ad mortem eum coēgit. Postquam Rōmam revertit, sē cōsulem cum Lepidō collēgā fēcīt. Deinde in Africam profectus,³ suōs inimicōs post multa proelia superāvit. Ubi Catō, quī nōn longē ab urbe Uticā castra posuerat, certior est factus de victōriis eius, mortem sibi cōscīvit.

Post annum Caesar Rōmam revertit ubi quartō sē cōsulem fēcīt. Eī tamen quīēte fruī nōn licuit: statim in Hispāniās est profectus, quod ibi Pompēi filiī, Gnaeus et Sextus, ingēns bellum parāverant. Multa proelia secūta sunt quōrum ultimum ad Mundam erat. In hōc proeliō Caesar paene victus est ut sē voluerit occīdere nē post tantam rei militāris glōriam in potestātem inimicōrum

¹ *Near.*

² Perf. pass. partic. agreeing with **ipse**.

³ Observe that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

⁴ See 236, 10.

⁵ Perf. indic. pass. of **īferō**, an irregular verb which is treated in Lesson LI; translate, *was brought on*.

venerit; dēnique suōs in aciem redūxit vicitque hostīs.
Ex Pompēi filiīs māior¹ occisus est, minor fūgit.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

cōnsciscō, -ere, -scivī, -scītus,	gener, -erī, m. son-in-law.
to determine; with mor-	glōria, -ae, f. glory.
tem sibi, to commit sui-	lacrima, -ae, f. tear.
cide.	postrēmō, adv. finally.
fortūna, -ae, f. fortune.	quartō, adv. for the fourth
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, to	time.
pour out.	soror, -ōris, f. sister.

LESSON XLVII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

366

EXAMPLES

1. **Postquam** Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit.
After Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.
2. **Ubi** parātī sunt, oppida sua incendērunt.
When they were prepared, they set their towns on fire.
3. **Cum** primum potuit, ad exercitum contendit.
As soon as he could, he hurried to the army.

(a) The pupil will remember that similar sentences have been used frequently in the preceding lessons. Such temporal clauses usually refer to a single past action and take the Perfect Indicative.

Rule.—*Postquam, after, ubi, ut, when, cum primum, ubi primum, simul atque (simul āc), as soon as*, when referring to a single past action, are used with the Perfect Indicative.

W. 530, 531; B. 287; AG. 324; H. 602.

¹ **māior** is often used to mean *the elder*; **minor**, *the younger*. Compare **māiorēs**, *ancestors*.

367

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY ANTEQUAM AND PRIUSQUAM ¹

EXAMPLES

1. **Oppidum nōn antequam tēla deerant expūgnātum est.**
The town was not taken until arms failed.
2. **Neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen pervēnērunt.**
They did not stop fleeing until they reached the river.
3. **Caesar priusquam haec faciat, castra oppūgnābit.**
Before Caesar does (shall do) this, he will storm the camp.
4. **Priusquam id effici posset, Rōmānī aderant.**
The Romans were there before that could be done.

(a) Notice that in the first two sentences the clauses introduced by **antequam** and **priusquam** express an actual fact and have the Indicative; but in sentences 3 and 4 the clauses express an act as anticipated and have the Subjunctive.

368

Rule.—*Antequam* and *priusquam* are used with the Indicative to express an actual fact; with the Subjunctive to express an act as anticipated.

W. 534; B. 291, 292; AG. 327; H. 605.

369

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY DUM

EXAMPLES

1. **Dum haec geruntur, ad flūmen contendērunt.**
While this was being done, they hurried to the river.
2. **Dum erat facultās, abībant.**
So long as there was a chance, they went away.

¹ **Antequam** and **priusquam** are compounded of the adverbs **ante**, **prius**, and the conjunction **quam**; they are often separated: **ante . . . quam**, **prius . . . quam**; as in sentence 2.

3. **Caesar exspectat dum nāvēs convenient.***Caesar is waiting until the ships (shall) assemble.*4. **Caesar nōn exspectāvit dum Helvétii pervenirent.***Caesar did not wait until the Helvetii should arrive.*

(a) Notice that in sentence 1 **dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative expressing a continued action in past time. The Present is used, as the clause expresses something which was going on at the same time with the action of the principal verb; but we translate by the past.

(b) When, as in sentence 2, **dum** means *so long as*, any tense of the Indicative may be used.

(c) Notice that in sentences 3 and 4 **dum**, *until*, introduces clauses of expected action and that the Subjunctive is used.¹

370 *Rule.*—**Dum**, *while*, is used with the Present Indicative; **dum**, *so long as*, with any tense of the Indicative; but **dum**, *until*, introducing a clause of expected action, is used with the Subjunctive.

W. 523; B. 293; AG. 328; H. 603.

371

VOCABULARY

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (ab + eō, 360), to go away.	interclūdō, -ere, -clūsi, -clūsus, to cut off.
compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētus, to fill, cover.	poscō, -ere, poposci (poscitūrus), to demand.
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessurus (cum + cēdō, 338), to yield.	prōvideō, -ēre, -vidī, -visus (prō + videō, 229), to provide.
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. sally.	trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (trāns + eo, 360), to cross.
extrā, prep. outside of.	

¹ Sometimes **dum**, *until*, introduces an actual event; it is then used with the Indicative: **exspectāvērunt dum pervēnit**. *They waited until he arrived (not for him to arrive).*

372 1. Cum primum facultās data est, cōpiās ēdūxit et montem militibus complere coepit. 2. Nōn prius eum abire patiuntur quam ab eō concessum sit, ut hostibus alterō diē occurrerent. 3. Nōn prius ille vacuus ā militibus relictus est locus quam ēruptiō est facta. 4. Dum adulēscentēs longius prōcēdunt, hōstēs quī undique convēnērunt ēruptionem fēcērunt et eōs castris interclūsērunt. 5. Dum tempus noctis patiēbātur, quiēte per herbam fruēbantur. Ubi sōl ortus est, abībant, atque eō diē multa milia passuum prōcēdebant. 6. Dīxit eōs ipsōs quidem nōn debere dubitare, quīn hostēs prōgredi extrā agmen auderent. 7. Exspectāvit dum omnēs undique convenīrent; antequam abīret, quid in tantā difficultāte vellet, imperāvit. 8. In ēiusmodi difficultātibus, quantum diligentiā prōvidērī poterat, sapienter prōvidēbātur. Sīgnū profectionis datum est priusquam hostēs domum discēderent. 9. Priusquam eī certiōrēs fierent, obsidēs poposcit, atque postquam hī traditī sunt, flūmen trānsiit. 10. Nihil erat quod sē virtūte nōn efficere posse putārent, nec prius sequi dēstitērunt quam mūrō portisque adpropinquāvērunt.

373 1. So long as the night allowed, they advanced; but they did not arrive before the sun rose. 2. As soon as they arrived, he began to lead forth his troops and to cross the river. 3. He brought all his legions together into one place, before the Gauls could be informed of his arrival. 4. The enemy waited until he should cover the hill with men, before they made an attack. 5. While the soldiers were pitching and fortifying the camp, the young men made a sally. 6. There was no provision¹ that was not made, and they thought that with courage they could do everything. 7. Do not stop advancing until you arrive near the wall and the gates of the city. 8. After

¹ Compare **372**, 8.

the hostages had been handed over, Caesar departed and the tired soldiers dispersed to their homes.

LESSON XLVIII

CLAUSES INTRODUCED BY CUM

CUM TEMPORAL

374

EXAMPLES

1. **Tēcum videor esse, cum tuās litterās legō.**
I seem to be with you when I read your letter.
2. **Tum erās cōsul cum meam domum incendēbant.**
You were consul at the time when they set my house on fire.
3. **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haedui.**
At the time Caesar entered Gaul, the Haedui were the leaders.

(a) Notice that these clauses introduced by **cum**, like those in 366, fix or determine the time which is meant, and have the Indicative. Often the independent part of the sentence contains **tum**, **eō tempore**, *then, at that time*, or a similar expression. Compare these clauses with defining Relative Clauses 281, *b*, remembering that **cum** is itself a relative.

CUM CIRCUMSTANTIAL

375

EXAMPLES

1. **Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, sē in montem recēpērunt.**
Being unable to (when they could not) withstand the charges of our soldiers any longer, they withdrew to the mountain.

2. **Caesari cum id nūntiātum esset, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit.**

When this had been reported to Caesar, he hurried into further Gaul.

3. **His cum persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs misērunt.**

Being unable to (since they could not) persuade these, they sent envoys.

4. **Cum diū pūgnātum sit, hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.**

While (although) the battle lasted a long time, no one could see an enemy.

(a) Notice that all these clauses introduced by **cum** express not the time so much as the situation or the circumstances, under which the action denoted by the principal verb took place, and have the Subjunctive. If the Indicative had been used in 1 and 2, **cum . . . nōn poterant**; **cum . . . nūntiātum erat**, to give the full meaning we should have had to translate: *It was when they could not*; *It was when report had been made*, etc.

(b) In English we use either a participial clause, as in the translation of 1 and 3, or a relative *when*, *as*, etc., to express the same relation. Such clauses in English may express simply the circumstances or they may be causal or concessive: e. g., "Being in town, I saw him," may tell nothing but the circumstances under which I saw him; but it may also mean, "Because I was in town, I saw him"; or even "Although I was in town, I saw him." Exactly so in Latin, circumstantial clauses with **cum** and the Subjunctive may express Cause as in 3, or Concession as in 4.

- 376 **Rule.**—*Cum* is used with the Indicative to determine the particular time of an action; with the Subjunctive to state the situation or circumstances of an action; such clauses may also express Cause or Concession.

W. 535, 536, 542, 571; B. 288, 289, 309. 3; AG. 325, 326; H. 598, 600, 601.

377

VOCABULARY

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (dē + faciō, 272), <i>to fail, be wanting.</i>	nāscor, nāscī, nātus, <i>to be born, arise.</i>
instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, <i>to arrange, draw up.</i>	nocturnus, -a, -um, <i>of the night, by night (nox, 177).</i>
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectus, <i>to read.</i>	perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per + faciō, 272), <i>to finish.</i>
littera, -ae, f. <i>letter</i> (of the alphabet), plur. <i>letter</i> (epistle).	prōdūcō, -ere, -xī, -ctus (prō + dūcō, 264), <i>to lead forth.</i>
mūnitiō, -ōnis, f. <i>fortification</i> (mūniō, 291).	propinquus, -a, -um, <i>neighboring; as a substantive, relative.</i>

- 378 1. Caesar, cum suōs iniquō locō pūgnātūrōs esse existimāret, eōs ē castrīs ēducere et ab¹ dextrō latere hostium cōstituere coepit. 2. Dum illi dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt,² litterās ad lēgātum mīsīt nē animō dēficeret. 3. Cum vir insīgnī locō nātus mortuus est, propinquī conveniunt ut de morte eius quaerant. 4. Nōlīte vōs potestātī eōrum permittere; omnia prius experiantur quam illud cōsiliū probētis. 5. Cum ipse centuriō vulneribus aetāteque cōfectus esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat. 6. Eō tempore cum ēruptiō facta est, labōre vulneribusque cōfēctī hostīs circumveniēbātis et ā castrīs interclūdēbātis. 7. Cum milites summō studiō sīgnū poscerent, cōpiās prōdūcī aciemque instruī iussit. 8. Antequam suis persuadēre posset ut extrā mūnitiōnēs prōcēderent, hostēs fossam trānsierant. 9. Labōre operis quod nōndum perfectum est defessī, simulque adventū hostium perterritī, neque ēruptiōnem facere neque aciem instruere audēbant.

¹ Giving the direction; translate *on*.

² Often, as here, *to discuss, treat*.

10. Ubi litterās Caesaris lēgit, cōpiās expeditās ēdūcī et incertīs itineribus noctū ad eum ire iussit.

- 379** 1. When he arrived at the camp, he learned that the neighboring tribes were in arms. 2. Since not only courage but also weapons now failed our men,¹ the centurion ordered them to withdraw. 3. Although they were tired out by the long march, they did not stop² working day or night. 4. The enemy filled up the ditch before Caesar's soldiers knew what was being done. 5. At the very time when that sally took place, we were crossing the river. 6. Inasmuch as the fortifications had not yet been finished, he sent a letter to Caesar for aid.³ 7. While this was happening in Gaul, Caesar was arming the young men. 8. As soon as he had read the letter, he went to the other camp, of which his brother was in charge. 9. Being unable to persuade the soldiers to fight, he ordered them to withdraw within⁴ the fortifications.

380

READING EXERCISE

The Assassination of Caesar 44 B. C.

Iam omnia bella cīvilīa tōtō orbe⁵ terrārum composuerat ut Rōmam revertī posset. Cum plūrimī māximīque honōrēs ā senātū dēcretī essent, inter quōs ut⁶ pater patriae appellārētur ac dictātor perpetuus esset, cīvēs eī⁷ irātī esse coepērunt quod honōrēs, quī ā populō antea dēcernēbantur, dabat eīs quibus voluit, et senātui,⁸ quī eī tantōs honōrēs dederat, nōn adsurgēbat aliaque paene rēgia insolentius faciēbat; sed cum populus eum rēgem appellāvisset, respondit *Caesarem sē, nōn rēgem esse*, et cum ā cōsule Antōniō diadēma saepius capitī⁸ admōtum

¹ Dative.

² *intermittō*. Compare 358, 2.

³ Use a purpose clause.

⁴ *In* with the accu. ⁵ Abl. of place.

⁶ *ut . . . appellārētur*, etc., a substantive clause depending on *dēcretī essent*.

⁷ Dative.

⁸ Dat. depending on a compound verb, 344.

esset, reppulit atque in templum Iovis mīsit. Contrā eum multī senātōrēs equitēsque coniūrāvērunt. Princīpēs inter coniūrātōs fuērunt duō Brūtī, Marcus et Decius, ex eō genere Brūtī, quī primus cōsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, Cāius Cassius et Servilius Casca. Ab hīs Caesar cum inter cēterōs¹ vēnisset in cūriam, multīs vulneribus occīsus est; deinde Capitōlium occupātum est. Cum obliviō caedis eius ā senātū dēcrēta esset atque obsidēs acceptī essent, coniūrātī ā Capitōliō dēscendērunt. Testāmentō Caesaris inter hērēdēs institūtus et in nōmēn adoptātus est Cāius Octavius, sorōris nepōs; populō Rōmānō hortī trāns Tiberim datī sunt. Corpus Caesaris, cum in campum Martium portārētur, ā plebe ante rōstra² cremātum est.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,	duo, two. ³
to bring near.	hērēs, -ēdis, m. heir.
adoptō, -āre, to adopt.	insolenter, adv. haughtily.
adsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -sur-	irātus, -a, -um, angry.
rēctus, to rise before.	nepōs, -ōtis, m. grandson.
Capitōlium, -ī, n. the capitol.	obliviō, -ōnis, f. pardon.
cīvilis, -e, civil.	orbis, -is, m. circle; orbis
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus,	terrārum, the world.
to settle, finish.	perpetuus, -a, -um, perpetual,
coniūrātus, -ī, m. conspira-	permanent.
tor.	repellō, -ere, reppulī, -pulsus,
cūria, -ae, f. senate-house.	to put away, refuse.
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus,	rōstra, -ōrum, n. rostra, plat-
to vote, decree.	form (for speakers).
diadēma, -atis, n. crown.	soror, -ōris, f. sister.
dictātor, -ōris, m. dictator.	testāmentum, -ī, n. will.

¹ Supply senātōrēs.

² So called because it was adorned with the rams (rōstra) of captured ships. A temple was afterward built at the spot where Caesar's body was burned.

³ The declension will be given later.

LESSON XLIX

CAUSE AND CONCESSION

CAUSE

381 ONE of the most common ways of expressing cause is by **cum** and the Subjunctive, **376**; other particles are **quod**, which has already been used, **264**, **quia**, and **quoniam**, *because*, *since*.

382

EXAMPLES

1. **Quod mōns aberat mille passūs, eō sē recēpērunt.**
Because the mountain was a mile away, they withdrew to it.
2. **Quia haec fieri nōn posse intellegēbant.**
Because they understood that this could not be done.
3. **Quoniam mē vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vōs quidem dēfendam.**
Since I cannot save myself and you, I will defend you at least.
4. **Aristidēs expulsus est patriā quod iūstus esset.**
Aristides was driven from his native land, because (as people said) he was just.

(a) Notice that in sentences 1–3 the causal clauses with **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam** and the Indicative state the reasons as those of the writer or speaker, while in 4, where the reason of some one else is reported, the Subjunctive is used. Such a Subjunctive is really in Indirect Discourse, as the implied quotation shows.¹

¹ Naturally when a verb of saying or thinking is expressed, all causal clauses, being subordinate, must have the Subjunctive.

- 383** *Rule.*—*Quod, quia, quoniam, because, since,* are used with the Indicative to give the reason of the speaker or writer; with the Subjunctive to give the reason of some one else.

W. 544-546, B. 286; AG. 321; H. 588.

CONCESSION

- 384** Two of the common ways of expressing concession are by *cum* with the Subjunctive, **376**, and by *etsi*, *even if*, usually with the Indicative, **314**. Another common way is by *quamquam* with the Indicative, **357**.

W. 570; B. 309, 2; AG. 313, *e*; H. 586.

385

VOCABULARY

<i>accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus</i> (ad + <i>cēdō</i> , 338), to approach.	<i>incolō, -ere, -uī, —</i> , to dwell, inhabit.
<i>autem</i> , conj. but, however, moreover.	<i>ineō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus</i> (in + <i>eō</i> , 360), to enter, enter upon.
<i>cāsus, -ūs</i> , m. chance, occurrence.	<i>laccessō, -ere, -sivī, -sītus</i> , to provoke, challenge, harass.
<i>cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tus</i> , to have regard for, care for, consult. ¹	<i>postridiē</i> , adv. (posterus + <i>diēs</i>), on the next day.
<i>ēgredior, -ī, -gressus</i> , to go forth.	<i>pridiē</i> , adv. (prior + <i>diēs</i>), on the preceding day.
<i>eō</i> , adv. thither, to that place (is).	<i>reperiō, -īre, repperī, reperit</i> , to find.
<i>frūstrā</i> , adv. to no purpose.	

- 386** 1. Ea quae antea postulāvistis, fieri licet, quoniam propius accessistis mūnitiōnēsque nostrās circumvēnistis.

¹ *hunc cōsulere*, to ask this man's advice; *huic cōsulere*, to look out for this man's interest.

2. Cum virī complūribus pūgnīs dēfessī essent atque tēla eōs dēficerent, nē noctū quidem hostīs lacessere dēstitērunt. 3. Quia locum magis idōneum reperīre nōn poterat, postrīdiē montem militibus expeditīs complēre hostīsque interclūdere instituit. 4. Cum prīdiē frūstrā hostīs lacessivisset, novam bellī ratiōnem iniit ut ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia parāret. 5. Iī quī ea loca incolēbant ē finibus suis ēgressī sunt, quod frūmentum deesset; itaque Caesar eō contendit. 6. Petīvērunt, quoniam nullā ratiōne amīcīs cōsulare possent, ut sibi ēius voluntāte ē cīvitate ēgredi liceret. 7. Quī nāvibus praeerat, adulēscēns erat et rei militāris imperitus; quod postrīdiē ventum secundum nactus est, prōgrediēbātur. 8. Cum hostēs aut ex ripā aut paulum in aquam prōgressī pūgnārent, nostrōs celeriter oppressērunt. 9. Caesar autem, cum lēgātī cōsiliū probāret et ipse idem sentīret, nullā ratiōne id facere poterat. 10. Imperātor, quod nullum ēiusmodi cāsū expectābat, suōs etsī omnibus malīs dēfessī erant, aequum in locum prōdūxit et aciem instrūxit.

- 387 1. Inasmuch as we can not look out for our friends' interests, we beg to be allowed to leave the city. 2. Although the soldiers were tired with their work, they did not stop provoking the enemy. 3. Caesar determined to enter upon a new method of fighting, because on the previous day he had challenged the enemy to no purpose. 4. They begged Caesar to care for their friends because, as they said,¹ they could not care for them themselves. 5. Caesar determined to go to England; when he arrived there, he proceeded² to make provision against all chances. 6. Those who dwelt in England at the time when Caesar arrived there were barbarians. 7. The Britons could not conquer the Romans because they were not so experienced in warfare.

¹ Compare 382, 4.

² Use *Instituō*.

LESSON L

PARTICIPLES

388 LEARN the Present Active and the Perfect Passive Participles of the Model Verbs, 479–489.

389 Participles are adjectives in form and agreement; for the declension of the Present Active see 468; the Perfect Passive is declined like **bonus**, 467. In force they are verbs, having the same constructions as the verbs to which they belong.

390

EXAMPLES

1. **Fortissimē pugnāns interfectus est.**
He was killed while fighting most bravely.
2. **Gallia est omnis dīvisa.**
Gaul is divided as a whole.
3. **Ducem vulnerātum servāvit.**
He saved the wounded leader (or the leader who was wounded).
4. **Auctōritāte rēgis permōti, cōstituērunt exīre.**
Moved by the influence of the king, they decided to go out.
5. **Cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta, ē finibus exīre conābātur.**
When the state was aroused (the state having been aroused) on account of this, it attempted to leave its territory.

(a) Notice in sentence 1 that the present participle represents the action as going on at the time indicated by the verb.

(b) The perfect participle with **sum** may become

nothing more than a predicate adjective, as in 2; but its most common use is to express an action as finished before the time of the main verb, as in 3, 4, and 5.

(c) Notice also that the participles in 4 and 5 may express time, cause, concession, etc., according to the context in which the sentences are found. Therefore, we may best translate by *when, because, although*, etc., or by a verb coordinate with the main verb, e. g., "They were moved by the influence of the king and decided," etc.

391

ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

1. **Caesare dūce oppidum expūgnāvērunt.**

Under the leadership of Caesar they stormed the town.

2. **Caelō serēnō sōl ortus est.**

The sun rose in a clear sky.

3. **Gnaeō Pompēiō, Marcō Crassō cōsulibus Germānī Rhēnum trānsiērunt.**

In the consulship of Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Crassus (or When Pompey and Crassus were consuls) the Germans crossed the Rhine.

4. **Germānī clāmōre auditō fūgērunt.**

The Germans fled on hearing the shout.

(a) Notice that in these sentences two nouns, a noun and an adjective, or a noun and a participle are used in the Ablative to express some circumstance attendant on the action of the main verb; this Ablative may also express time, as it clearly does in 3, or cause, as in 4. These same ideas might all be expressed by *cum*-clauses.

(b) Notice further that this ablative has no grammatical relation to the rest of the sentence; it is therefore called the *Ablative Absolute*.¹

¹ While we sometimes employ in English such phrases as "Caesar being leader," "The shout having been heard," these expressions are

- 392** *Rule.*—A noun or pronoun with another noun, an adjective or participle may be used in the Ablative to express the circumstances, time, or cause of an action.

W. 397-399; B. 227; AG. 255; H. 489.

393

VOCABULARY

adducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō, 264), to induce.	oportet, -ēre, -uit, impers. v. it is proper, one ought.
beneficium, -ī, n. (bene + faciō), kindness, service.	permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (per + movēō, 245), to move deeply, to induce.
Cassivelaunus, -ī, m. Cassivelaunus.	pertinēō, -ēre, -uī —, (per + teneō, 227), to pertain to, to reach.
commūnis, -e, adj. common.	queror, -ī, questus, to complain.
dividō, -ere, -visī, -visus, to divide.	trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (trāns + eō, 360), to cross.
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ex + eō, 360), to go forth.	ūsus, -ūs, m. use, need (ūtor, 298).
iugum, -ī, n. yoke, ridge (of mountains).	uterque, -traque, -trumque, each (of two). ¹
maritimus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to the sea, sea (mare, 162).	

- 394** 1. Britannī, nostrō adventū permōtī, suae salūtī cōsulere et ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia prōvidēre instituērunt. 2. Omnibus rēbus parātīs, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, Caesar postrīdiē in Britanniam trānsiit. 3. Imperiō bellī Cassivelaunō permissō, Britannī cum commūnī cōsiliō noctū convēnissent, postrīdie nostrōs proeliō lacessere

often awkward, and such phrases as those used in the translations given are generally to be preferred. Compare with the Latin construction the English Nominative Absolute. It should be remembered that the English has a Perfect Active Participle, "having made," etc., but that the Latin has none, save in Deponent Verbs.

¹ Declined like *uter*, 272, 469.

coepērunt. 4. Nostri, ab utrōque latere hostis adortī,¹ eōs gladiōs ēdūcere cōnantis atque vix sē dēfendentis oppresērunt. 5. Cassivelaunō dūce Britannī ā Caesare superātī sunt; finēs illius ā maritimīs cīvitatibus māgnō flūmine dīvisī sunt. 6. Inopiā omnium rērum adductī, quod frūmentum in agrīs esse repperērunt nūllum, ē finibus noctū clam exīre instituērunt. 7. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, dē Britanniae mōribus, quid sentiam quidque cognōverim prōpōnere oportet. 8. Tandem Britannī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nactī, hostis locō expellunt; fugientis ad flūmen sequuntur complūrisque interficiunt. 9. Conciliō dīmissō, Haeduīs dē iniuriis querentibus petentibusque ut sē beneficiō² dīgnōs habēret, libertātem concessit. 10. Interim dīmissis circum omnia oppida literis iisque ab oppidānis lectis, barbari dē suis fortūnis dēspērāvērunt.

- 395** 1. Induced by the hope of plunder, they left the ships and marched out by night. 2. Having found the enemy on the top of the ridge, they drove them away and killed nearly all as they fled. 3. This done, they set forth and reached the ships before the sun rose. 4. Caesar crossed into Britain when Pompey and Crasso were consuls; when he arrived Cassivelaunus was the chief man there. 5. He left several cohorts on the shore³ and proceeded into the interior of the country.⁴ 6. When the prisoners begged that he would not kill them, he granted them their liberty. 7. Caesar did not pursue the fleeing enemy farther, because he wished to finish the fortifications before night.

¹ Remember that the perf. partic. of a deponent verb has an active meaning.

² Abl. with **dīgnōs**, *worthy of*.

³ Translate, *near the sea*.

⁴ Translate, *into the interior parts*.

READING EXERCISE

The Destruction of the Conspirators

396 Populus Rōmānus Pompēiō et Caesare interfectis redisse¹ in libertatem vidēbātur; et redisset,² nisi Caesar hērēdem scripsisset Gaium Octāvium, quī postea Augustus Caesar est appellātus, eumque filium adoptāvisset. Haec prīma cīviliū bellōrum causa erat cum³ Antōnius, irātus quod praelātus⁴ sibi esset iuvenis Octāvius, eum opprimere vellet. Sed Antōnius ā senātū hostis iudicātus est et Caesar Octāviānus⁵ iūssus est cum cōsulibus dēsīgnātis Hirtiō et Pānsā bellum contrā eum gerere. Hī dūcēs profecti eum ad⁶ Mutinam vicērunt. Evēnit tamen ut victōrēs cōsulēs ambō occīsī sint; unde factum est ut trēs exercitūs unī iuvenī Octāviānō pārērent. Fugātus Antōnius āmissō exercitū ad Lepidum pervēnit quī tum prōvinciās Galliae cum plūrimis cōpiis habēbat. Mox Lepidō adiuvante Caesar cum Antōniō pācem fēcit et Rōmam⁷ cum exercitū reversus effēcit ut sibi annum vicēsimum agentī⁸ cōsulātus darētur. Cum sociis Antōniō et Lepidō rem publicam armis tenēre coepit. Per hōs etiam Cicerō orātor occīsus est multique aliī nōbilēs.

Intereā Brūtus et Cassius ingēns bellum mōvērunt. Contrā eōs igitur profecti Octāviānus et Antōnius (relictus enim erat Lepidus ut Italiā dēfenderet) ad⁶ Philippōs, Macedoniae urbem, pūgnāvērunt. Cum primō proeliō victi essent Antōnius et Caesar, tamen interfectus est

¹ A shorter form for **redisse**.

² What kind of condition?

³ The clause **cum . . . vellet** is in predicate apposition to **haec prīma causa**.

⁴ **praelātus esset**, plup. subj. pass. of **praeferō**, to *prefer*.

⁵ The form of name which Octavius assumed after his adoption.

⁶ With names of towns, *near*.

⁷ Compare 236, 10.

⁸ **annum agere**, to *spend a year*; translate here, *in his*, etc.

Cassius; secundō Brūtum et plūrimōs nōbilis quī cum illis bellum gesserant, victōs interfēcērunt. Āc sic inter dūcēs dīvisa est rēs pūblica ut Caesar Hispāniās, Galliās, Ītaliāque tenēret, Antōnius Asiā et Orientem, Lepidus Africā acciperet.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adoptō, -āre, <i>to adopt.</i>	irātus, -a, -um, <i>angry.</i>
civilis, -e, <i>civil (civis).</i>	nōbilis, -e, <i>well known, noble.</i>
cōsulātus, -ūs, m. <i>consul-ship (cōsul).</i>	Oriēns, -ntis, m. <i>the Orient, East.</i>
dēsignātus, -a, -um, <i>elect.</i>	pāreō, -ēre, pāruī, —, <i>to obey.</i>
ēveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventūrus (ē + veniō), <i>to turn out;</i> often impersonal with a substantive clause as its subject.	redeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus (re + eō), <i>to return.</i>
hērēs, -ēdis, m. <i>heir.</i>	trēs, tria, <i>three (473).</i>
	unde, adv. <i>wherefore.</i>
	vicēsimus, -a, -um, <i>twentieth (vigintī).</i>

LESSON LI

THE VERB FERŌ, to bear, bring

397 LEARN the conjugation of ferō entire with the exception of the gerund, gerundive, and supine, 489.

398 VOCABULARY

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (ab + dō), <i>to put away, to hide.</i>	adversus, -a, -um, <i>opposite, unfavorable.</i>
accidō, -ere, -cidi, -cāsūrus, <i>to fall, happen.</i>	cōnstō, -āre, -stiti, -statūrus, <i>to agree, correspond (impers. it is an established fact, it is well known).</i>
adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (ad + ferō), <i>to bring up.</i>	

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, <i>to get accustomed to.</i>	pār, paris, <i>equal, like.</i>
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. <i>custom.</i>	paulātim, adv. <i>gradually.</i>
crēber, -bra, -brum, <i>frequent.</i>	referō, -ferre, rettulī, -lātus (re + ferō), <i>to carry back (pedem referre, to retreat).</i>
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātus (in + ferō), <i>to carry, bring upon.</i>	succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (sub + cēdō), <i>to come up, to relieve.</i>
integer, -gra, -grum, <i>whole, fresh.</i>	

- 399 1. Hōc cāsū adductus, omnīs quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ēgredi iubet; mulierēs sē in silvās abdidērunt. 2. Levī proeliō factō, ad oppidum in quō hiemāre cōnsuēvit, contendit, quod maritimum erat. 3. Litterīs mediā nocte adlātīs, intellēxit māgnūm perīculum accidisse, quō nostrī interclūsī fugientēsque interfectī essent. 4. Prope oppidum collis erat; ab flūmine parī māgnitūdine alter collis nāscēbātur adversus huic; eō Caesar exercitum addūxit. 5. Integrī dēfessīs¹ successērunt; sed, cum nūllum frūstrā pīlum accideret, omnēs tandem sub montem pedem rettulērunt. 6. Crēberrimīs Caesaris beneficiīs adductus lēgātīs respondit nōn oportēre eōs dē suā voluntāte dubitāre. 7. Ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse suam cōnsuētūdinem dē paribus condiciōnibus loquī. 8. Crēbrīs nocturnīs ēruptiōnibus aut īgnem mūrō inferēbant aut milītēs incertīs temporibus lacessēbant; haec quidem ratiō bellī eīs māximē prōderat. 9. Hostēs, quia prīdiē Caesar neque cōpiās prōdūxisset neque flūmen trānsisset, paulātim pedem rettulērunt. 10. Ea silva ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs finīs hostium ad flūmen pertinet; multa ibi animālīa nāscī cōstat.

- 400 1. Being asked why they had retreated, they replied that they could not endure the onrush of our soldiers. 2. As it was agreed that they must pass the winter in

Gaul, no grain had been provided in Britain. 3. When they complained of their wrongs, Caesar replied that he brought no hope or terms of peace. 4. This state had often brought war upon the Gauls; with equal valor it had often defended itself. 5. Fresh troops came up, and the enemy were gradually dislodged from their position and retreated. 6. Several ships, sailing out¹ of the harbor, were drawn up opposite us, but it was not agreed what our ships ought to do. 7. As the Gauls were in a higher position, their javelins fell with great force. 8. They said that the Germans had gradually grown accustomed to crossing the Rhine.

LESSON LII

PRONOUNS AND IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

401 REVIEW the Pronouns learned thus far, 123, 129, 135, 136, 298, 317, 318, 320.

402 Learn the declension of the Indefinite pronouns *aliquis*, *some one*, *quisquis*, *whoever*, *quicumque*, *who-soever*, 478.

403 The following nine adjectives have *-ius* throughout in the Genitive Singular, with the exception of *alter* which has *alterius* throughout :

<i>ūnus</i>	<i>ūna</i>	<i>ūnum</i>	<i>one, single</i>
<i>sōlus</i>	<i>sōla</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>alone</i>
<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>whole</i>
<i>ūllus</i>	<i>ūlla</i>	<i>ūllum</i>	<i>any</i>

¹ Notice the real time here expressed.

nūllus	nūlla	nūllum	not any
alius	alia	aliud	another
alter	altera	alterum	the other (of two)
uter	utra	utrum	which (of two)
neuter	neutra	neutrum	neither

(a) These have no Vocative. The form **alterius** is regularly employed as the genitive of **alius** to prevent confusion with the nominative. Five of these have been already used. The declension is given, 469.

404

VOCABULARY

animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus	redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (re + (animum + advertō), to notice.	eō), to return. unde, adv. whence? the place from which (both inter- rogative and relative). valeō, -ēre, -ui, —, to be strong.
quārē, adv. whereby? how? wherefore (both interrog- ative and relative).		

405

1. Neque ūllum fere tōtius hiemis tempus erat, quā aliquis nūntius dē adversō proeliō adferrētur. 2. Quamquam crēbris nūntiis commūnique periculō permōtī sunt, sic parātī erant, ut, quicumque accidisset cāsus, hunc aequō animō ferrent. 3. Quidquid illī possunt, nāvibus valent; maritimās enim partēs incolunt, neque est ūllus¹ apud eōs rei militāris ūsus. 4. Alterō diē hostēs iugō relictō proelium iniērunt; proeliō adversō factō, nostrī pedem rettulērunt et unde vēnerant rediērunt. 5. Quia neutrum eōrum flūminum trānsire poterant nostrī ad montem, quō prōvincia ā maritimīs cīvitatibus dīvisa est, paulātīm rediērunt. 6. Nōn oportēre putābat commūnem salutem Haeduīs sōlis committere; quārē militēs paulātīm sē recipere iūssit. 7. Paribus beneficiīs ūsus,² contrā

¹ When a sentence is connected with the preceding, **neque . . . ūllus** rather than **et nūllus** is used as here. Compare sentence 1.

² From **ūtor**.

voluntātem eōrum facere nōn dēbere intellēxit; itaque neutrum eōrum contrā alterum iuvābat. 8. Graviter querentibus quod ē finibus ēgredi coācti essent, respondit sē amicōrum fortūnīs cōsulare cōsuēscere. 9. Haec ubi Caesar animadvertit, cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in iugō cōstituit. 10. Cum nōn modo tēla sed etiam cōnsilia utrīque dēficerent, uterque rūsus exercitum in castra redūxit.

- 406** 1. The Gauls are accustomed to defend themselves against whatsoever people brings war against them. 2. The soldiers answered, "Whoever they are, let us attack them before they return to the place from which¹ they came." 3. Whatsoever wars you wish to be carried on, we will carry on without any danger on your part.² 4. Between the two armies was a forest which offered some hope of safety. 5. Each commander ordered his soldiers to withdraw gradually from their position and retreat to this forest. 6. Neither noticed that in the other army fresh troops were relieving the exhausted. 7. Caesar was strongest in infantry,³ but the commander of the enemy trusted to his cavalry alone.

READING EXERCISE

- 407** *The Battle of Actium (31 B. C.) and the End of the Civil Wars*

Sublātīs coniūrātīs quī Caesarem occiderant, supererat Sextus Pompēius quī post clādem ad Mundam fugā ēvāserat. Hīc contractis eīs quī supererant ex partibus⁴ Brūtī Cassīque, ingēns bellum in Siciliā commōvit, sed ab Agrippā ita vīctus est ut in Asiam effugere coāctus sit; ubi paulō post occisus est.

¹ Compare 405, 4.

³ Compare 405, 3.

² Objective gen.

⁴ *The party.*

Cum iam omnem occāsiōnem bellī cīvilis sublātā esse vidērētur, pāx imprōvisō ab Antōniō rupta est; nam hīc captus amōre Cleopātrae, rēgīnae Aegyptī, sorōrem Octāviānī repudiāvit, et incitātus ā rēgīna quae muliebri cupiditāte etiam in urbe rēgnāre volēbat, bellum contrā Octāviānum parāvit. Quī, primō nūntiō hūius periculī adlātō, Brundisiō¹ in Graeciam trānsiit ut imminentī bellō² occurreret, positisque castris in Epīrō ad Actiaci³ Apollinis templum, classe sinum Ambracium quem nāvēs Antōnī tenēbant obsēdit. Octāviānō quadringentae amplius⁴ nāvēs, ducentae hostibus fuērunt; sed hārum māgnitūdō numerum illārum superāvit: haec ipsa rēs hostibus exitiō⁵ fuit cum nāvēs tam māgnae essent ut nōn celeriter movī possent, et classis clārā nāvālī pūgnā victa est. Prīma dux fugae erat rēgīna; eam secūtus est Antōnius quī fugientis mulieris quam pūgnantis exercitūs suī comes esse māluit. Proximō annō Caesar rēgīnam Antōniumque Alexandrēam persecūtus, ultimam bellis cīvilibus imposuit manum. Antōnius obsessus ā Caesare, dēspērātis rēbus, praesertim fāmā occīsam esse⁶ Cleopātram permōtus, sē ipse interfēcit; rēgīna cum frūstrā ā Caesare petīssset ut sibi rēgnum redderētur, et sē triumphō⁷ servārī vīdisset, sibi serpentem admīsīt, cūius venēnō occīsa est.

¹ "Abl. of place from which"; this is essentially the same as the Abl. of Separation, **206**. Notice, however, that the name of a town has no preposition.

² **344**.

³ The promontory of Actium was on the south side of the entrance to the Ambracian bay.

⁴ The comparative is used here without any influence on the case of *nāvēs*.

⁵ Study **415-418**.

⁶ Indirect discourse after *fāmā*.

⁷ Dative depending on *servārī*, *saved for*.

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

Actiacus , -a, -um, <i>of Actium.</i>	muliebris , -e, <i>womanish, a woman's.</i>
admittō , -ere, -mīsi, -missus, <i>to let come, give access to.</i>	obsideō , -ēre, -sēdi, -sessus, <i>to blockade.</i>
amplius , adv. comp. <i>more (than).</i>	occāsiō , -ōnis, <i>f. opportunity.</i>
commoveō , -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>to arouse.</i>	persequor , -ī, -secūtus, <i>to overtake.</i>
contrahō , -ere, -trāxī, -tractus, <i>to draw together, collect.</i>	quadringenti , -ae, -a, <i>four hundred.</i>
cupiditās , -ātis, <i>f. desire, passion.</i>	repudiō , -āre, <i>to cast aside, divorce.</i>
ducenti , -ae, -a, <i>two hundred.</i>	rumpō , -ere, rūpī, ruptus, <i>to break.</i>
evādō , -ere, -vāsī, -vāsūrus, <i>to go out, escape.</i>	serpens , -ntis, <i>f. snake.</i>
exitium , -ī, <i>n. ruin.</i>	sinus , -ūs, <i>m. bay.</i>
imminēns , <i>threatening.</i>	supersum , -esse, -fuī, <i>to survive, remain.</i>
impōnō , -ere, -posuī, -positus, <i>to put on.</i>	triumphus , -ī, <i>m. triumph.</i>
	venēnum , -ī, <i>n. poison.</i>

LESSON LIII

REVIEW OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

THE GENITIVE

408 Thus far the Genitive has been used chiefly to indicate the Possessor, 35, the Object, 156, and Quality, 232. It has also been employed as the Object with *obliviscor*, 305, and in such phrases as

pars militum, in which it denotes the whole. The Genitive in this use is called the *Partitive Genitive*.

- 409 **Rule.**—The Partitive Genitive is used to denote the whole of which the modified word is a part.

W. 355; B. 201; AG. 216; H. 440, 5–443.

THE DATIVE

- 410 The Dative has been used chiefly as the Indirect Object, 37, to denote the Possessor, 45, and with Compound Verbs, 344. The Dative with *persuādeō* also represents the construction with a considerable class of verbs.

- 411 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with intransitive verbs meaning *favor, please, trust, assist* (and their opposites), *command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade*.¹

W. 330; B. 187, ii; AG. 227; H. 426, 1.

(a) It is evident that the passive of these verbs can only be used impersonally, e. g., *I am persuaded, mihi persuādētur*.

- 412 Certain adjectives like *grātus, idōneus, similis*, and *dissimilis* from their meanings are used with the dative.

- 413 **Rule.**—The Dative is used with Adjectives meaning *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, equal, near, and dear*, and with others of like or opposite meaning.

W. 333; B. 192; AG. 234; H. 434.

¹ Many of these verbs are used with the dative in English, but this is not apparent, because our language has lost most of its inflectional endings.

414 Two constructions which have not yet been employed are illustrated by the following:

415

EXAMPLES

1. **Māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.** *It was of great service to our men.*
2. **Cohortēs castrīs praesidiō relinquit.** *He leaves the cohorts for the defense of the camp.*

(a) Notice that in these sentences the datives **ūsui**, **praesidiō** are in the predicate, are abstract nouns, and express either that which the subject tends to become or the purpose of the verb's action. Such a dative is called the *Predicate Dative*.

416 **Rule.**—The Predicate Dative is used to express Tendency or Purpose.

W. 341-345; B. 191; AG. 233; H. 433.

417 Notice that in the sentences in 415, the datives **nostrīs**, **castrīs** are not dependent on any single word, but rather on the entire sentence, and express the persons or thing with reference to which the statements are made. This construction is called the *Dative of Reference*.

418 **Rule.**—The Dative of Reference denotes the object interested or referred to in a statement.

W. 334-335; B. 188; AG. 235; H. 425, 2-4.

419

VOCABULARY

adeō , -ire, -ii, -itūrus (ad + eō), to approach.	cōgitō , -āre, to think.
aditus , -ūs, m. approach.	comprehendō , -ere, -ndī, -prehēnsus, to arrest, seize.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (con + ferō), <i>to bring together.</i>	palam , adv. <i>openly</i> (compare clam, 272).
dēmōnstrō, -āre , <i>to point out, show.</i>	praeter , prep. w. accu. <i>beyond, contrary to, besides.</i>
hūc , adv. <i>hither, to this place</i> (compare hīc, 132).	quā , adv. <i>in what way, by what road</i> (quī).
opīniō, -ōnis , f. <i>opinion, belief, reputation.</i>	singulī, -ae, -a , <i>single, individual.</i>
	suspīciō, -ōnis , f. <i>suspicion.</i>

420 1. Crassus autem adulēscēns, cum aliquōs hostīs accēdere animadvertisset, septimam cohortem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsīt. 2. Rēbus quae ad bellum ūsuī erant hūc conlātis, suōs exīre prohibēbat timōrisque opīniōnem hostibus augēbat. 3. Hostēs autem putābant nūllōs sibi esse parīs posse; sōlīs deīs concēdere cōnsuēscēbant. 4. Dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrōs quōs incolant nihil esse reliquī¹; quārē eīs partem exercitūs subsidiō mīsīt. 5. Ut omnem timōris suspīciōnem tolleret, alteram partem exercitūs mīsīt quae Haeduīs bellum īferret. 6. Hīc autem, nē aut īferre iniūriam vidērētur aut daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem, paulātīm rediit unde vēnerat. 7. Quam ob rem, quisquis is esset cūius operā Gallī excitātī essent, comprehendī atque interficī iūssit. 8. Quārē Caesarem adiērunt palamque de eōrum iniūriīs questī sunt quī ēius beneficiīs ūsī, amīcīs ēius nocērent. 9. Repērit omnis ferē hominēs māgnae virtūtis esse neque ūllum ad eōs aditum esse mercātōribus. 10. Eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae antea cōgitāverat, lēgātīs singulis in singulās² cīvitātēs missīs, ipse flūmen trānsiit quā minimē altum erat.

421 1. Caesar left a cohort as protection for the baggage and returned by the easiest road.³ 2. Having found a

¹ Gen. modifying nihil, 409.

² One to each.

³ Translate, where the road was easiest.

suitable place for a camp, he built a fortified camp and made¹ a ten-foot ditch. 3. He sent his lieutenants, each with a legion,² to make war upon the Germans. 4. Everything that was useful for the storming of a city he brought to this place. 5. One part of the army he left in camp, another part he sent as a support to those who were fighting. 6. That they might remove every suspicion of fear, they went out of camp openly. 7. They come to him and show him that they have nothing except their arms left. 8. They arrested those through whose agency the lieutenant had been killed, and brought them to Caesar.

LESSON LIV

REVIEW OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE

THE ACCUSATIVE

422 THE Accusative has thus far been used as the Direct Object, **31**, as the Subject of the Infinitive, **328**, with a number of prepositions to express various relations, and also to denote the Duration of Time, **174**. Closely connected with this last use is the Accusative of Extent of Space, e. g., *sex milia passuum prōcēdit*, *he advances six miles*. The rule in **174** therefore may be expanded to read :

423 *Rule.*—Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

W. 324; B. 181; AG. 256, 257; H. 417.

¹ dūcere.

² Compare **420**, 10.

424 The Accusative with **ad** or **in** has frequently been used to express the Aim or Limit of Motion, and since **236**, 10 names of towns *without* a preposition have been employed to express the same thing. Learn the following:

425 *Rule.*—The Aim or Limit of Motion is expressed by the Accusative with a preposition; but names of towns omit the preposition.¹

W. 325; B. 182; AG. 258, 2, a; H. 418.

THE ABLATIVE

426 The Ablative has been used in nearly all its important relations. If these various constructions be examined, it will be found that they fall into three classes corresponding to the English Objective case with *from*, *with*, and *in*.

427 This is historically due to the fact that the Latin Ablative represents three cases which have been blended into one—the Ablative proper or *from*-case, the Instrumental or *with*-case, the Locative or *in*-case.

428 The Ablative proper includes the

1. Ablative of Separation, **206**.
2. Ablative of Agent, **100**.
3. Ablative of Comparison, **190**.

429 The Instrumental Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, **71**.
2. Ablative of Manner, **150**.
3. Ablative of Means, **110**.
4. Ablative with Deponents,² **297**.

¹ Also a few other words, of which **domum**, *home*, is the most frequent.

² This is properly also Ablative of Means.

5. Ablative of Cause, 119.
6. Ablative of Degree of Difference, 197.
7. Ablative of Quality, 234.
8. Ablative Absolute, 392.

430 To these should be added the Ablative in such expressions as *linguā differunt*, *they differ in language*; *virtūte praecedunt*, *they excel in bravery*; in which the Ablative specifies that with respect to which the statement is made.

431 *Rule.*—The Ablative of Specification denotes that with respect to which anything is or is done.

W. 398; B. 226; AG. 253; H. 480.

432 The Locative Ablative includes the

1. Ablative of Place, 55.
2. Ablative of Time, 176.

433

VOCABULARY

Avāricum, -ī, <i>Avaricum</i> (a town in Gaul).	item, adv. <i>likewise, also</i> .
concurrō, -ere, -currī or -curri, -cursūrus, <i>to run together</i> .	lingua, -ae, f. <i>tongue, language</i> .
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūncus, <i>to join together</i> .	longinquus, -a, -um, <i>long, distant</i> .
conloquor, -ī, -locūtus (cum + loquor), <i>to talk together</i> .	perpetuus, -a, -um, <i>continuous</i> .
cursus, -ūs, m. <i>course, march</i> .	plērumque, adv. <i>for the most part, generally</i> .
differō, -ferre, distuli, dilātus (dis + ferō), <i>to spread, scatter</i> (in the present system, <i>to differ</i>).	praecedō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prae + cēdō), <i>to go before, excel</i> .
inde, adv. <i>from that place, after that</i> .	primō, adv. <i>at first</i> .
infrā, prep. w. accu. <i>below</i> .	subitus, -a, -um, <i>sudden</i> .
	ultrā, prep. w. accu. <i>beyond</i> .
	ūnā, adv. <i>at the same time, in company with</i> .

434 1. Complūria milia passuum ultrā eum locum prōgressus, petivīt ut sibi ūnā cum Caesare conloquī licēret. 2. Volēbat flūmen trānsire complūribus milibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns esset perfectus. 3. Cōnstābat inter omnīs, quā arbitrārentur hostīs oppidum adire, iugum aditū difficillimō esse perpetuisque silvīs mūnitum. 4. Plērumque accidit ut cōnsilia Gallōrum subita sint; māximam opīniōnem virtūtis habent, cēterōs Gallōs auctōritāte praecēdunt. 5. Longīs litterīs dēmōstrant sē longinquam oppūgnātiōnem ferre nōn posse; quārē cū integrīs militibus Avāricum contendit. 6. Captō iugō et succēdentibus nostrīs, Haeduī quī haec animadverterant ad arma concurrunt, itemque aliōs hortantur. 7. Praeter opīniōnem cōsuētūdinemque accidit ut omnēs ūnā concurrant; primō māgnus clāmor audītur, inde cursus fit ad iugum. 8. Quoniam illa castra ab oppidō milia passuum multa absunt, hī nōn facile coniungī cum dūce possunt; altera castra multō propinquiōra sunt. 9. Caesar, lectīs litterīs, sī palam conloquī vellent, concessit; sed hī omnēs linguā differunt. 10. Fossam inter turrīs dūxit,¹ quō tūtius ab subitō hostium impetū etiam singulī redire possent.

435 1. They marched seven miles on that day and pitched camp one mile from the town. 2. Though tired out by the march and the flight, they dug the ditch through the entire night. 3. On one side the camp was protected by a continuous forest, on the other by a river. 4. For the most part they use horses in battle that they may retreat more easily. 5. At first they ran to arms with a shout; after that they approached the town in silence. 6. He hurried to Avaricum, because he learned that the city was being fortified by the enemy. 7. When Caesar arrived in this place, the whole state was in arms; but the

¹ fossam dūcere, to make a ditch.

Romans were superior in the number of troops. 8. He pitched the new camp ten miles below the old camp, and waited there several days.

READING EXERCISE

Octavian's Triumph and Rule

436 Bellis tōtō orbe ita cōfectis Octāviānus Rōmam rediit ubi trēs triumphōs ēgit,¹ ūnum ex Illyricō,² alterum ex Actiacā³ victōriā, tertium dē Cleopātrā. Tum Iānī geminī⁴ portās suā manū clausit, quae tantummodo bis antea clausae erant, primō sub Nūmā⁵ rēge, iterum Titō Manliō cōsule⁶ post primum Pūnicum bellum.⁷ Iam rem publicam, quam duodecim annōs cum Antōniō et Lepidō tenuerat, sōlus per quattuor et quadragintā annōs administrābat. Nūllō tempore rēs Rōmāna magis florēbat: nam Octāviānus Rōmānō adiēcit imperiō plūrimās prōvinciās; vicit etiam proeliis Dācōs,⁸ et Germānōrum ingentis cōpiās cecidit, ipsōs quoque trāns Albim⁹ flūmen submōvit, quod longē ultrā Rhēnum est. Reddidērunt etiam Parthī¹⁰ legiōnum sīgna quae Crassō victō¹¹ ademerant. Scythī et Indī, quibus antea Rōmānōrum nōmen

¹ Celebrated.

² Illyricum was north of Epirus in Greece.

³ An adjective formed from **Actium**.

⁴ Janus, the god of gates and doors, was called **geminus**, *double*, because he was represented with two faces looking in opposite directions. His temple, near the northeast corner of the Forum, was always open in time of war.

⁵ Numa was the second king of Rome.

⁶ 235 B. C.

⁷ The First Punic War lasted from 264–241 B. C.

⁸ The Dacians lived north of the Danube, in and around the modern Roumania.

⁹ The Albis was probably the modern Elbe.

¹⁰ The Parthians were the foes most feared by the Romans in the East.

¹¹ In 53 B. C.

incōgnitum fuerat, dōna et lēgātōs ad eum mīserunt. Tantō amōre¹² etiam apud barbarōs fuit ut rēgēs, populī Rōmānī amīcī, in honōrem ēius conderent urbēs quās Caesarēas nōminārent, sicut in Maurētāniā¹³ ā rēge Iubā, et in Palaestīnā, quae postea urbs erat clārissima. Octāviānō māximī honōrēs ā senātū dēlāti sunt: ipse Augustus nōminātus et in ēius hōnōrem mēnsis sextilis eōdem nōmine est appellātus quod illō mēse bellis cīvilibus finis est impositus. Multa mala lūxuriamque cīvium gravibus lēgibus suppliciisque ita coercuit ut ob haec facta pater patriae quoque appellātus sit. Obiit in oppidō Campaniae Nōlā;¹⁴ sepultus est Rōmae¹⁵ in campō Martiō. Post mortem Dīvus appellātus est.

437

SPECIAL VOCABULARY

adiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>to add.</i>	dīvus, -a, -um, <i>divine.</i> duodecim, <i>twelve.</i>
adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -emptus, <i>to take away.</i>	floreō, -ēre, florui, —, <i>to be prosperous.</i>
bis, <i>adv. twice.</i>	Iānus, -ī, <i>m. Janus.</i>
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, <i>to cut down, kill, annihilate.</i>	incōgnitus, -a, -um, <i>unknown.</i>
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, <i>to close.</i>	lūxuria, -ae, <i>f. luxury.</i>
coerceō, -ēre, -ercui, -ercitus, <i>to check, restrain.*</i>	nōminō, -āre, <i>to name.</i>
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, <i>to found.</i>	obeō, -ire, -iī, -itūrus, <i>to die.</i>
dēferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātus, <i>to offer, grant.</i>	quadringintā, <i>forty.</i> quattuor, <i>four.</i>
	sepeliō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), sepultus, <i>to bury.</i>

¹² 234.

¹³ The modern Algiers and Morocco.

¹⁴ A town about fifteen miles east of Naples.

¹⁵ The locative (24), *at Rome.*

- sextilis**, -e, *the sixth* (used only with reference to the month).
sicut, adv. *as*.
submoveō, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *to remove*.
tantummodo, adv. *only*.
trēs, tria, *three* (473).
-

LESSON LV

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

- 438 LEARN the Future Active Participle and the Gerundive of all the paradigm verbs, 479–489.

ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

- 439 The Future Active Participle with **sum** forms the Active Periphrastic Conjugation: Pres. Indic. **amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love*, Imperf. Indic. **amātūrus eram**, *I was about to love*, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, 479, a.

- 440 This Periphrastic Conjugation may be used in any of the active constructions of the verb where the meaning allows.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

- 441 The Gerundive with **sum** forms the Passive Periphrastic Conjugation: Pres. Indic. **amandus est**, *He is to be* (i. e., *must be, ought to be*) *loved*. Imperf. Indic. **amandus erat**, *He was to be* (ought to have been) *loved*, etc.

A complete synopsis is given, 479, a.

DATIVE OF AGENT

442

EXAMPLES

1. **Mihi oppidum est expūg-** *The town is to be (must be)*
nandum. *stormed by me.*
 2. **Vōbis prōvincia erat dē-** *The province was to be (had)*
fendenda. *to be) defended by you.*

(a) Notice that this second Periphrastic Conjugation implies duty, necessity, or obligation. The person on whom the duty rests is expressed by the Dative;¹ as this person is virtually the Agent the construction is called the *Dative of Agent*.

- 443 **Rule.**—The Dative of Agent is used with the Gerundive to denote the person on whom the duty rests.

W. 339; B. 189; AG. 232; H. 431.

444

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc- | offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātus |
| tus, <i>to join to.</i> | (ob + ferō), <i>to present.</i> |
| dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (dē | praesertim, adv. <i>especially.</i> |
| + ferō), <i>to bring down,</i> | quālis, -e, <i>of what sort, as.</i> |
| <i>report.</i> | rēgnum, -ī, n. <i>kingdom, royal</i> |
| discessus, -ūs, m. <i>departure</i> | <i>power (regō).</i> |
| (discēdō). | servitūs, -ūtis, f. <i>bondage</i> |
| eōdem, adv. <i>to the same place.</i> | (servus). |
| excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus | studeō, -ēre, -uī, —, <i>to pay</i> |
| (ex + cēdō), <i>to go out from.</i> | <i>attention to, be eager for</i> |
| lātē, adv. <i>broadly.</i> | (411). |
| obtineō, -ere, -uī, -tentus (ob + | utrimque, adv. <i>from both</i> |
| teneō), <i>to maintain, hold.</i> | <i>sides.</i> |

- 445 1. Cum intellegeret omnīs Gallōs celeriter ad bellum excitārī atque omnīs hominēs libertātī studēre, lātius sibi

¹ This is only one form of the Dative of Reference, 418.

exercitum mittendum esse putāvit. 2. Poenae timōre permōtī, nocentīs comprehēnsūrī erant interfectūrīque; dēmōnstrant sē perpetuā servitūte premī. 3. Ēiusmodi cōnsilium neque initūrī erant neque ūllum omnīnō bellum contrā eum gessūrī. 4. Eōdem impedimenta nostrīs cōnferenda erant priusquam hostēs ad arma concurrerent; ad hostīs dēlātum est Caesarem castra cum oppidō mūrō coniūctūrum esse. 5. Ea apud eōs cōnsuetūdō est ut quī summum magistrātum obtineant, excēdere ex finibus nōn liceat. 6. Discessū Caesaris animadversō, Gallī longinquiōrēs cīvitatēs sibi adiūnxerant; ad locum infrā pontem, inde Avāricum sē contulērunt. 7. Eō tempore, praesertim cum tālis oblāta esset potestās, quālis nunquam antea, exeundum sibi esse putāvērunt. 8. Utrisque integrī succēdunt; et, quod cōstābat montem mille passuum abesse, eōdem sua omnia contulērunt. 9. Subitō impetū oppidum cēpērunt; illum, quī rēgnum tot annōs obtinuerat, comprehēnsū suppliciō gravī interfēcērunt. 10. Nactī idōneum ventum sub noctem ex portū exiērunt, et postrīdiē longius dēlātī ultrā locum cōstitūtum ad terram vērērunt.

- 446** 1. Caesar had to recall the men from work and to give the signal for battle at the same time. 2. They said they would go into whatsoever place Caesar should decide, and would carry their goods to the same place. 3. He thought that he ought to make war upon the Gauls, especially as the opportunity was offered. 4. The Haeduan reported to Caesar that all the Gauls were as a rule eager for a revolution.¹ 5. He thought that there would never be another opportunity such as² this was. 6. He who had held the royal power in his state for so many years was arrested and killed. 7. They said that they had to endure perpetual bondage and were eager for freedom.

¹ novae rēs.

² quālis.

LESSON LVI

GERUND AND SUPINE

- 447 LEARN the Gerunds and Supines of all the paradigm verbs, 479-489.

THE GERUND

- 448 The Gerund is a verbal noun with the force of an active verb. The Infinitive supplies the nominative and accusative cases in the constructions of Subject and Direct Object, 325-327.

EXAMPLES

1. Loquendī finem fēcit. *He made an end of speaking.*
2. Ad audiendum parātī sumus. *We are prepared to hear (for hearing).*
3. Hominis mēns discendō alitur. *Man's mind is nourished by learning.*

- 449 The Gerund may have a direct object, e. g., spatium arma capiendī, *time for taking arms*; but in place of the Gerund with the object accusative, the Gerundive in agreement with the noun is to be preferred.

450 EXAMPLES

1. Cōnsilium urbis capiendae. *A plan for taking the city.*
2. Vēnērunt ad pācem petendam. *They came to ask for peace.*
3. Haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum adferēbat. *This fact caused Caesar difficulty in forming his plan.*
4. Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus. *Brutus was killed in freeing his country.*

(a) Notice that in each example the Gerundive is a verbal adjective agreeing with its noun, which is in the case required by the sentence.¹

(b) Notice that in the second example **ad pācem petendam** expresses purpose and is equivalent to **ut (quī) pācem peterent**. This is one of the common ways of expressing purpose.

THE SUPINE

451

EXAMPLES

1. **Lēgātī vēnērunt rogātum** *Envoys came to ask help.*
auxilium.
2. **Perfacile factū est haec** *To accomplish this is very*
perficere. *easy (to do).*

(a) Notice that in the first example the Supine **rogātum** is used with a verb of motion to express purpose, being equivalent to **ut (quī) rogārent** or **ad auxilium rogandum**. This is the only use of this Supine.²

(b) The Supine in **-u** is rare, being used in a few expressions like the second example as Ablative of Specification.

452

Rule.—The Supine in **-um** expresses Purpose after verbs of Motion.

W. 654; B. 340, 1; AG. 302; H. 633.

453

VOCABULARY

aliēnus, -a, -um, <i>another's,</i>	officium, -ī, n. <i>duty, office,</i>
<i>foreign (alius).</i>	<i>function.</i>
iūs, iūris, n. <i>justice, right.</i>	perfacilis, -e, <i>very easy.</i>

¹ The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is rare, so that no example is here given.

² The future pass. infin. **amātum īrī**, etc., belongs under this head, as **īrī** is the pres. pass. infin. of **eō** used impersonally.

potius, adv. *rather*.

praetereā, adv. *besides*.

praestō, -āre, -stiti, —, *to exhibit, perform*.

vel, conj. and adv. *or, even*.¹

- 454** 1. Nullā in rē deerat lēgātus, et in hortandīs militibus imperātōris et in pūgnā militis fortis officia praestābat. 2. Praeter cōsuētūdinem cotīdiē sub castra studiō pūgnandī vērunt hostēs; tandem Caesar certum diem conloquendī dicit. 3. Gallī sibi Germānōs adiūnxerant ad sociōs nostrōs vel comprehendendōs vel interficiendōs; ex omnibus partibus Galliae eōdem concurrēbant hostēs. 4. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum nē sibi sociisque noceret; dixerunt sē iūra, agrōs, arma Rōmānīs solīs permittere. 5. Perfacile factū esse dēmōstrat sine ūllā suspiciōne omnia quae ad proficiendum pertineant, comparāre. 6. Alii cursū et pūgnā dēfessī interfecti sunt pūgnantēs; aliī² novā speciē equitum nostrōrum permōti sē dedērunt. 7. Praetereā lēgātī ad Caesarem vērunt orātum ut sibi potestās excēdendī fieret. 8. Pūgnātum est utrimque vehementer sub mūrīs; ubi nostri locō cedere vīsī sunt, hūc undique concurritur. 9. Equitātū potius quam peditātū māximē valēbat imperātor noster; itaque suis cōpiīs plērumque ad vastandōs agrōs hostium utēbātur. 10. Undique ad Haeduōs dēfendendōs convērunt ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs finibus pūgnārent.

- 455** 1. On the next day Caesar led forth his forces from each camp and gave the enemy a chance to fight.³ 2. Caesar was confident that no one would after that cross into Britain for the purpose of carrying on war. 3. The Gauls sent ambassadors to ask for aid, that they

¹ **aut** is exclusive: **aut Caesar aut nūllus**, *either Caesar or nobody*; but **vel** gives a choice: **vel hīc vel ille**, *either this man or that* (as you please).

² Compare 358, 7.

³ Compare 454, 7.

might not be obliged to fight in others' territory rather than in their own. 4. He showed him that it was very easy to get possession of the royal power in his state. 5. They got ready everything that was of use for besieging a town. 6. They injured the enemy greatly by laying waste their fields and setting fire to their buildings. 7. They sent an ambassador to beg that Caesar would not deprive them of their rights and their lands.

LESSON LVII

NUMERALS

456 LEARN the Cardinal numbers to 1,000 and the ordinals through the twenty-first, 473.

457 Review the declension of *ūnus*, and learn the declension of *duo* and *trēs*, 469; the other cardinals through *centum* are not declined except those compounds which have *ūnus*, *duo*, or *trēs*. The hundreds from *ducentī* to *nōngentī* are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

458 Review the declension of *mille*, 252. All ordinals are declined like *bonus*.

459 1. *Discessū hostium Caesar exercitum in duās partēs dīvisīt; quattuor legiōnēs milia passuum quīndecim in Haeduōs dūxit.* 2. *Ducentī hominēs pūgnantēs utrimque interficiuntur; omnia aedificia longē lātēque incenduntur.* 3. *Adiūnxit sibi sex cohortēs atque diē cetāvō ex suis in finis aliēnōs prōgressus est.* 4. *Spē rēgnandī novīs rēbus studēbat; sed illi in libertāte manēre quam servitūtem*

ferre mālēbant. 5. Etsi ille mīlia passuum quīque abesse hostis certior factus est, tamen misit equitēs qui cōgnōscerent quālis esset nātūra montis. 6. Fidē sociōrum perspectā, cum novem cohortibus peditum infrā pontem mīlibus passuum quattuordecim flūmen trānsiit. 7. Quōcumque adiit, hortābātur ut sē cum Germānis coniungerent; quīntō diē multa mīlia illōrum in ūnum locum convēnerant. 8. Diēs continuōs trēs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et hostibus potestātem pūgnandī fēcit. 9. Haedui reliquaeque item cīvitatēs, cōgnitō Caesaris discessū, eōdem unde prīdiē vēnerant, rediērunt. 10. Urbis dēfendendae causā mūrūm fēcit in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim, fossamque novem pedum dūxit.

- 460** 1. He made a ten-foot ditch and a wall twelve feet high. 2. Three cohorts were left as a protection for the baggage, five were sent among the Haeduan. 3. On the eighth day he drew up his army in line across the river. 4. He learned that the enemy were twenty-five miles distant from the camp. 5. On the fifth day twenty thousand men arrived to defend the town. 6. The spears of these people are two feet shorter than those which the Haeduan use. 7. The soldiers worked at building¹ the camp thirty consecutive hours. 8. Two ships were carried out of their course² by the wind and were unable to make³ the harbor.

¹ Simply *built*.

² *dēferō*.

³ *capiō*.

Caesar's First Invasion of Britain (B. G. IV, 20-36)

In the late summer of 55 B. C. Caesar, having returned from a brief invasion of Germany, decided to cross to Britain in order to overawe the tribes living there and to put an end to the support given by them to the Gauls

1. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde
5 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīset, genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mer-
10 cātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique

[The numerals preceding the notes refer to the lines above.]

1. 1. **exiguā . . . reliquā**: abl. abs., 392.
2. **ad septentriōnēs**: *toward the north*.
4. **bellīs**: abl. of time when, 176.
5. **subministrāta** (esse): inf. in ind. disc.—**sī**: equivalent to **etsī**.—**ad bellum gerendum**: 450, b.
6. **sibi ūsuī**: 415-418.—**fore**: the subject is contained in the clauses **sī . . . cōgnōvisset**; in translating use the pronoun *it*: *he thought it would be . . . , if, etc.*
- 7 f. **adīset, perspēxisset, cōgnōvisset**: in ind. disc. representing the fut. perf. of the direct; **adierō, perspēxerō, cōgnoverō**.
8. **loca**: 132.
9. **incōgnita**; probably the Gauls were not so ignorant as they seemed; but they were unwilling to help Caesar.
10. **illō**: adv., *to that place*.—**hīs ipsīs**: i. e., *mercātōribus*.
12. **Galliās**: plural with reference to the separate divisions of Gaul.

mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō,
neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem
15 ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur,
neque quī essent ad māiōrem nāvium multītūdinem
idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

Volusenus and Commius sent on reconnoitering expeditions

2. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum face-
ret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī
longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus
rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus
5 cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus
in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvis undique ex finitimīs
regiōnibus, et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum
bellum fēcerat classem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōsiliō
ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā
10 complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt
quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rō-
mānī obtemperāre.

Quibus audītīs liberāliter pollicitus hortātusque ut in
eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum
15 iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs

13. **quanta esset**, etc.: ind. questions depending on **reperīre**,
l. 17. What do they represent of the direct discourse?

14. **incolerent**: supply **eam**, i. e., **īnsulam**.

15. **ūsum**: *skill*.

2. 1. **priusquam . . . faceret**: 36S.

2. **idōneum**: he did not, however, succeed in his attempt.—**nāvī longā**: *ship-of-war*.

4. **quam**: p. 100, n. 2.

5. **Morinōs**: this tribe lived nearest Britain.

7. **quam**: agreeing with **classem**, l. 8.—**Veneticum**: the Veneti, who lived in the northwestern part of Gaul, had been conquered in 56 B. c.

11. **polliceantur**: 280.—**dare**: 327.—**imperiō**: 411.

15. **Atrebātibus**: a tribe living south and west of the Morini, conquered in 57 B. c.

rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat civitatēs hortēturque ut
 20 populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

After preparing a fleet of ninety-eight transports besides his men-of-war and receiving assurances of loyalty from the Morini, Caesar crosses the channel

3. Hīs cōstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-
 dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit, equitēsque in
 ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvīs cōnscendere et sē
 sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset adminis-
 5 trātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primīs nāvibus
 Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus exposi-
 tās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspēxit. Cūius locī haec.

16. **ibi**: i. e., among the Atrebates.

17. **fidēlem**: yet three years later he turned against Caesar.

18. **māgnī**: gen. of value.—**habēbātur**: was considered.

19. **possit**: subordinate clause in ind. disc., 335.—**adeat, hortē-
 tur, nūntiet**: 335.

20. **fidem sequantur**: accept the protection of.

22. **facultātis**: modifying quantum, 409.

23. **audēret**: 282.

24. **revertitur, renūntiat**: see p. 138, n. 1.

3, 1. **Hīs . . . rēbus**: i. e., his preparations.

2. **tertiā vigiliā**: about midnight, as the night was divided into four watches. The date was very near August 26th, when the tide was high at 7.30 P. M.—**solvit**: cast off.

3. **ulteriōrem portum**: a harbor eight Roman miles off, where eighteen transports had been detained by the wind.

4. **paulō tardius**: they did not sail until three days later.

5. **hōrā . . . quartā**: about nine o'clock. The distance across is about thirty miles; the Romans landed not far from Dover.

- erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbā-
tur utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī postes.
10 Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbi-
trātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent ad hōram
nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribū-
nisque militum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnō-
visset et quae fierī vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut reī mili-
15 tārīs ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent (ut quae
celerem atque instābilem mōtum habērent) ad nūtum et
ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmīs-
sīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum,
datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum
20 septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō litore nāvīs
cōstituit.

The Britains resist a landing

4. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō
equitatū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs
ūtī cōsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus
ēgredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficul-
5 tās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōn-

8. **montibus**: the cliffs which come close to the water's edge.

11 f. **dum . . . convenirent**: for the other ships to come up, 370.
—**hōram nōnam**: about 3.30 P. M.

14 ff. **monuit**: the object clause depending directly on this is [ut]
ad nūtum . . . administrārentur, charged that everything
be done, etc.—**ut . . . postulārent**: as the art of war and
especially seamanship required. These clauses have the
imperf. subj., representing Caesar's **postulant**, as they are
an integral part of the command. Why is the imperf. used?

15. **ut quae . . . habērent**: characterizing clause, since they are
things which involve.

18. **aestum**: the tide set to the north and east about 6.30 P. M.

20. **lītore**: probably between Walmer Castle and Deal, northeast
of Dover.

4, 2. **essedāriīs**: fighters in war-chariots.—**quō . . . genere**: both
horsemen and chariots.—**cōsuērunt**: = **cōsuēvērunt**.

5. **altō**: deep water.

stituī nōn poterant; militibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedī-
tīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs
simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōsis-
tendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut
10 ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus mem-
bris expeditīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla cōnicerent et
equōs insuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī per-
territī atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperitī nōn
eādem alacritāte ac studiō quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliis
15 cōsuērānt ūtēbantur.

Caesar manoeuvres for an advantage—Bravery of a centurion

5. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvīs longās, quā-
rum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitiōr et mōtus ad
ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus
et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstituī
5 atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostis prōpelli ac
submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit.
Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō
genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōstitērunt ac
paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militi-
10 bus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī

6. **militibus**: dat. of agent with **dēsiliendum**, etc., 443.

7. **manibus**: abl. abs.—**oppressīs**: agreeing with **militibus**.

9. **cum illī**: *while the enemy*, 376.

12. **insuēfactōs**: *trained to this action*.

13. **generis**: gen. w. **imperitī**.

14. **pedestribus**: *on land*.

5, 1. **nāvīs**: subject of **removērī**, **incitārī**, **cōstituī**.

2. **inūsitiōr**: *less familiar*, i. e., than that of the transports.

4. **latus apertum**: the right, for the enemies' shields protected their left.

5. **inde**: i. e., from the ships-of-war.

6. **quae rēs**: *a manoeuvre which*.

10. **quī**: i. e., is **quī**.

decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat obtestātus deōs ut ea
rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret: “Dēsilitē,” inquit, “commi-
litiōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē
meum rei pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praesti-
15 terō.” Hōc cum vōce māgnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prō-
iēcīt atque in hostīs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī
cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūni-
versī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus
cum cōspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvē-
20 runt.

The Romans land, but for want of cavalry cannot pursue the Britons

6. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen,
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter īnsistere
neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī
quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat sē adgregābat, māgno-
5 pere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō nōtīs omnibus vadīs,
ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārīs ex nāvī ēgredientīs cōn-
spēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs
paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs
tēla cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, sca-

11. **obtestātus**: *appealing to*. The direct form of his appeal was:
Quod vōbīs fēliciter ēveniat, dēsilitē, etc.

17. **inter sē**: *one another*.—**tantum dēdecus**: as the loss of the
legion's eagle would be.

18. **ūniversī**: *with one accord*.

19. **subsecūtī**: i. e., the soldiers, the same as the subject of **cōn-
spēxissent**.

6, 1. **ab utrīsque**: *on both sides*.

2. **firmiter īnsistere**: *get a firm footing*.

3. **poterant**: notice the number of imperfects describing the
progress of the battle.—**alius aliā ex nāvī**: *men from
different ships*.

6 f. **ubi . . . cōspēxerant, adoriēbantur**, etc.: a general state-
ment, *whenever they saw*, etc.—**singulārīs**: *scattered soldiers*.

9. **scaphās**: *row-boats*.

10 phās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militi-
bus complērī iussit, et quōs labōrantis cōspēxerat hīs
subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitē-
runt, suīs omnibus cōsecūtīs, in hostīs impetum fēcērunt
atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī
15 potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īsulam
capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad pristinam fortū-
nam Caesarī dēfuit.

Envoys from the Britons sue for peace

7. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā re-
cēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt;
obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs esse pol-
licitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās
5 vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britan-
niam praemisum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad
eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, compre-
henderant atque in vincula coniēcērant; tum proeliō
factō remīsērunt, et in petendā pāce eius rei culpam in

-
11. **speculātōria nāvigia**: *scouting boats, light and swift.*—**quōs**
... **cōspēxerat** ... **submittēbat**: compare l. 6 above.
13. **simul**: = **simul atque**, *as soon as*.—**suīs omnibus cōsecū-**
tīs: *and all their comrades had joined them*. Notice that
this is *logically* parallel to the preceding clause, but that by
the use of the abl. abs. variety in expression is secured.
- 14 f. **neque**: *and yet* ... **not**.—**longius**: *very far*.—**quod equi-**
tēs, etc.: the cavalry were still waiting for a favorable wind.
See 3, 2 ff.
16. **capere**: *make*.
17. **fortūnam**: Caesar firmly believed in his own "good luck."
- 7, 3. **datūrōs, factūrōs esse**: the subject of both is the same as that
of **pollicitī sunt**.—**quae imperāsset**: ind. disc.; in the
direct, **quae imperāveris, faciēmus**.
5. **suprà**: 2, 14 ff.
6. **praemisum** [esse]: perf. inf. pass.—**illī**: i. e., the Britons.
—**ēgressum**: *when he had landed*.—**cum**: concessive.
7. **ōrātōris modō**: *in the character of (or as) an envoy*.

10 multitudinem contulērunt, et propter imprudentiam ut
 ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum
 ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petis-
 sent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere impruden-
 tiaē dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem
 15 statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquioribus locīs arces-
 sītā paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs
 remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique con-
 venīre et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepē-
 runt.

Caesar's cavalry transports encounter a violent storm

8. Hīs rēbus pāce cōfīrmātā, post diem quartum
 quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvīgintī dē
 quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant,
 ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum ad-
 5 propinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta
 tempestās subitō coōrta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre
 posset; sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur,
 aliae ad inferiōrem partem insulae, quae est propius
 sōlis occāsum, māgnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur;

-
11. **ignōscerētur**: impersonal, sc. **sibi**, *that their action might be pardoned*.
 13. **bellum sine causā**: the Britons were actually resisting an armed invasion.—**ignōscere**: the subject is the same as that of **dīxit**.
 15. **arcessītā**: *when fetched*.
 18. **convenīre**: with **coepērunt**.
 8, 1. **post diem quartum**: *three days after*, according to our reckoning. The Roman counted the day with which he started as the first.
 3. **suprā**: chap. 3.—**sustulerant**: *had received on board*.
 5. **Britanniae**: 344.
 6. **tempestās**: a northeast wind, blowing from the North Sea.
 7. **aliae . . . aliae**: *some . . . others*.
 8. **inferiōrem partem**: somewhere southwest of Deal.

10 quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petierunt.

The fleet is almost wrecked by the storm and high tide

9. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvīs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum
5 cūrāverat quāsque Caesar in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflētābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent—fūnibus, ancoris reli-
10 quisque armāmentis āmissis—ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deērānt, quae ad

10. **complērentur**: *began to fill*; the impf. indicates that the action was incomplete.

11. **adversā nocte**: *in the face of darkness*; concessive, 392.

9, 1. **eādem nocte**: probably August 30th.—**ut esset**: 269.

2. **aestūs māximōs**: in the English Channel the high tides vary from twenty to thirty feet, and these were naturally very strange to the Italians, since the tide in the Mediterranean is hardly perceptible.

4. **nāvīs**: obj. of **complēbat**.—**trānsportandum cūrāverat**: *had had the army brought*. The gerundive in agreement with the object is thus used with verbs of Giving, Sending, Caring, Permitting, Undertaking, and the like to express purpose. One of the most common verbs in this construction is **cūrō**. W. 644, 2; B. 337, 7 b, 2; AG. 294 d; H. 622.

8. **administrandī**: *of handling them*.

9. **fūnibus . . . āmissis**: abl. abs., giving the reason for the ships' being **ad nāvigandum inūtilēs**.

11. **magna**: with **perturbātiō**.—**id quod**: *a thing which, as*.

13. **quibus . . . possent**: 282.

reficiendās nāvīs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat
 15 hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in
 hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities

10. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs principēs Britanniae, qui
 post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlo-
 cūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvīs et frūmentum Rōmānīs
 decēsse intellexerent, et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum
 5 exiguītate cōgnōscerent,—quae hōc erant etiam angus-
 tiōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportā-
 verat,—optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā,
 frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in
 hiemem prōdūcere; quod hīs superātīs aut reditū inter-
 10 clūsīs nēminem postea bellī inferendī causā in Britan-
 niam trānsitūrum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūsus coniūrā-
 tiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex
 agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar suspects their purpose

11. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat,
 tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō quod obsidēs
 dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur.

14. ūsuī: 416.—omnibus cōnstābat: *all were agreed*. The sub-
 ject is hiemārī . . . oportēre.

15 f. in hiemem: *for the winter*.

10, 1. principēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 7.

3 ff. cum . . . intellexerent, cōgnōscerent: 376.

5. quae: referring to castrōrum.—hōc: abl. of cause, expanded
 in quod . . . trānsportāverat.

7. optimum factū: 451, b.

8. rem . . . prōdūcere: *to prolong the campaign*.

9. hīs . . . interclūsīs: *if these should be overcome*, etc. Abl.
 abs. expressing condition, circumstances, 392.—reditū: 206.

11, 2. ex ēventū: *from what had befallen his ships*.—ex eō quod:
from the fact that.

3. fore: = futūrum esse.—suspiciābātur: *began to suspect*.

Itaque ad omnīs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et
 5 frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et quae
 gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum materiā atque
 aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur, et quae ad eās rēs
 erant ūsuī, ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque cum
 summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim
 10 nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset
 effēcit.

He plans to thwart them. They attack a foraging party

12. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā
 frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque
 ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars
 hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-
 5 tāret, eī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Cae-
 sarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem quam cōnsuētūdō
 ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.
 Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris
 initum cōsiliī, cohortēs quae in statiōnibus erant sēcum

6. **materiā atque aere:** *timber and metal.* **aes** means both
 copper and bronze, which were used for bolts and to sheathe
 the beaks of the men-of-war, etc.

7. **quae:** neuter; the antecedent is the (unexpressed) subject (**ea**)
 of **comparārī**.

10. **ut . . . posset:** 269.—**nāvigārī:** impersonal, subj. of **pos-**
set. Translate, *so that they could sail.*

12, 1. **geruntur:** 370.

2. **frūmentātum:** 452.

3 f. **cum . . . remanēret, ventitāret:** causal.—**hominum:**
 i. e., the Britons.—**ventitāret:** *kept coming and going;* fre-
 quentative verb, W. 273, 2; B. 155, 2; AG. 167 b; H. 364.

6. **quam cōnsuētūdō ferret:** *than usual.*

8 f. **id quod erat:** *the true state of the case,* explained by
aliquid cōsiliī.—**novī cōsiliī:** 409.—**initum [esse]:**
 perf. pass. infin.

9. **cohortēs:** belonging to the 10th legion. Four cohorts, being
 ready, started at once, two took their places on guard, and
 the remaining four followed as quickly as they could arm.

- 10 in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit.
- 15 Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos noctu in silvas delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant,
- 20 simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

The Britons' use of chariots in battle

13. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnis partes perequitant et tela coniciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excidunt atque ita currus

11. *armari*: reflexive, *to arm themselves*.
 12. *paulo longius*: *some little distance*.
 13. *sustinere*: *were holding their own*.—*conferta*: *crowded together*.
 16. *pars una*: *only one part*; i. e., as yet uncut.—*suspicati*: *supposing*.
 17 f. *dispersos . . . occupatos*: agreeing with *nostros*, brought over from the line above.
 19. *incertis ordinibus*: *because their ranks were unsteady*, 392.
 13, 1. *ex essedis*: modifying *pugnae*. These war-chariots of the Britons were drawn by two horses, and held six fighting men (*essedarii*) besides the driver (*auriga*).
 3. *equorum*: subjective gen., *caused by the horses*.
 4. *cum . . . insinuaverunt*: *when they have worked their way in among*, 374.—*equitum turmas*: apparently the Britons' cavalry, so their fighting-line was made up of horse and foot, the dismounted *essedarii*.

conlocant ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliis praestant, āc
 10 tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt utī in dēclivī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere, et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Rescue of the foragers. The Britons gather in great force

14. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostrīs nōvitāte pūgnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et com-
 5 mittendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātis, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et
 10 nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibē-

7. **illī**: the fighting **essedārīi**.

8. **expeditum**: *ready*.

9. **praestant**: *display*.

10. **tantum . . . efficiunt**: *become so expert*.

11. **incitātōs**: *at full speed*.—**sustinēre**: *to check*.

12. **brevī**: *within a short space*.

13. **iugō**: which rested on the necks of the horses and supported the pole (**tēmō**).

14. **cōnsuērint**: shortened form of **cōnsuēverint**.

14, 1. **perturbātis nostrīs**: dat. with **auxilium tulit**.

5. **aliēnum**: *unfavorable*.

7 f. **nostrīs . . . occupātis**: with fortifying camp and getting supplies.

8. **quī . . . reliquī**: i. e., the Britons. The antecedent of **quī** is the (unexpressed) subject of **discessērunt**; compare 11, 7.

9 f. **quae . . . continērent, prohibērent**: *such as to, etc.*,
 282.

rent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnīs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expul-
 15 lissent, dēmōstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitudīne peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vēnērunt.

They are defeated in battle

15. Caesar, etsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā, quōs Commius Atrebās (dē quō ante dictum est)
 5 sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eis occidērunt; deinde omnibus
 10 longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Caesar returns to Gaul

16. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat duplicāvit, eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctī, infirmīs nāvi-

13 f. **praedae faciendae, suī liberandī**: objective gen. with **facultās**, 157; see also 450.—**darētur, expulissent**: what do these represent of the direct discourse?

15, 1. **idem**: subject of **fore**, and explained by **ut . . . effugerent**.

3. **equitēs trīgintā**: too few to be of service except in pursuit of a defeated enemy.

4. **ante**: 2, 15; 7, 4.

8. **tantō spatiō**: *over as much distance*.—**quantum . . . potuērunt**: *as their strength enabled them to run*.

16, 4. **propinquā diē aequinoctī**: abl. abs.; the equinox is still thought to be a stormy season.—**infirmīs nāvibus**: abl. abs.

5 bus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat.
Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam
noctem nāvīs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continen-
tem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem por-
tūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō infrā
10 dēlātae sunt.

5. **hiemī** : *stormy weather*.—**subiciendam** : sc. *esse*.

7. **solvit** : Napoleon III reckoned that the return to Gaul was
made on September 11th or 12th, so that the stay in Britain
lasted about three weeks.

9. **capere** : *to make*.—**paulō infrā** : to the southwest.

APPENDIX

TABLES OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

462

FIRST DECLENSION

Stem in ā

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	rosa	rosae
GEN.	rosae	rosārum
DAT.	rosae	rosīs
ACCU.	rosam	rosās
ABL.	rosā	rosīs

463

SECOND DECLENSION

Stem in o

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	servus, serve	servī	dōnum	dōna
GEN.	servī	servōrum	dōnī	dōnōrum
DAT.	servō	servīs	dōnō	dōnīs
ACCU.	servum	servōs	dōnum	dōna
ABL.	servō	servīs	dōnō	dōnīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	puer	puerī	ager	agrī
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs
ACCU.	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM., Voc.	vir	virī
GEN.	virī	virōrum
DAT.	virō	virīs
ACCU.	virum	virōs
ABL.	virō	virīs

THIRD DECLENSION

Mute Stems

	SINGULAR		
NOM., Voc.	princeps	rēx	mīles
GEN.	principis	rēgis	mīlitis
DAT.	principī	rēgī	mīliti
ACCU.	principem	rēgem	mīlitem
ABL.	principe	rēge	mīlite

	PLURAL		
NOM., Voc.	principēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs
GEN.	principum	rēgum	mīlitum
DAT.	principibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus
ACCU.	principēs	rēgēs	mīlitēs
ABL.	principibus	rēgibus	mīlitibus

	SINGULAR			
NOM., Voc.	vōx	obses	virtūs	caput
GEN.	vōcis	obsidis	virtūtis	capitis
DAT.	vōcī	obsidī	virtūtī	capitī
ACCU.	vōcem	obsidem	virtutem	caput
ABL.	vōce	obside	virtute	capite

	PLURAL			
NOM., Voc.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
GEN.	vōcum	obsidum	virtutum	capitum
DAT.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus	capitibus
ACCU.	vōcēs	obsidēs	virtūtēs	capita
ABL.	vōcibus	obsidibus	virtutibus	capitibus

Liquid, Nasal, and Spirant Stems

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	cōnsul	vīctor	homō
GEN.	cōnsulis	vīctoris	hominis
DAT.	cōnsulī	vīctorī	hominī
ACC.	cōnsulem	vīctorem	hominem
ABL.	cōnsule	vīctore	homine

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	cōnsulēs	vīctorēs	hominēs
GEN.	cōnsulum	vīctorum	hominum
DAT.	cōnsulibus	vīctoribus	hominibus
ACC.	cōnsulēs	vīctorēs	hominēs
ABL.	cōnsulibus	vīctoribus	hominibus

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	nōmen	honor	corpus
GEN.	nōminis	honōris	corporis
DAT.	nōminī	honōrī	corporī
ACC.	nōmen	honōrem	corpus
ABL.	nōmine	honōre	corpore

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
GEN.	nōminum	honōrum	corporum
DAT.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus
ACC.	nōmina	honōrēs	corpora
ABL.	nōminibus	honōribus	corporibus

Stems in i

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	cīvis	hostis	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvis	hostis	nūbis
DAT.	cīvī	hostī	nūbī
ACC.	cīvem	hostem	nūbem
ABL.	cīvī, -e	hoste	nūbe

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	cīvēs	hostēs	nūbēs
GEN.	cīvium	hostium	nūbium
DAT.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus
ACCU.	cīvis, -ēs	hostis, -ēs	nūbis, -ēs
ABL.	cīvibus	hostibus	nūbibus

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	mare	animal
GEN.	maris	animālis
DAT.	marī	animālī
ACCU.	mare	animal
ABL.	marī	animālī

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	maria	animālia
GEN.	—	animālium
DAT.	maribus	animālibus
ACCU.	maria	animālia
ABL.	maribus	animālibus

Mixed Stems

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	arx	urbs	cliēs
GEN.	arcis	urbis	clientis
DAT.	arcī	urbī	clientī
ACCU.	arcem	urbem	clientem
ABL.	arce	urbe	cliente

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	arcēs	urbēs	clientēs
GEN.	arcium	urbium	clientium
DAT.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus
ACCU.	arcēs, -is	urbēs, -is	clientēs, -is
ABL.	arcibus	urbibus	clientibus

465

FOURTH DECLENSION

Stem in u

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	manus	cornū	domus
GEN.	manūs	cornūs	domūs
DAT.	manuī, -ū	cornū	domuī, -ō
ACCU.	manum	cornū	domum
ABL.	manū	cornū	domū, -ō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	manūs	cornua	domūs
GEN.	manuum	cornuum	domuum, -ōrum
DAT.	manibus	cornibus	domibus
ACCU.	manūs	cornua	domūs, -ōs
ABL.	manibus	cornibus	domibus

466

FIFTH DECLENSION

Stem in ē

SINGULAR

NOM., VOC.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diēī	reī
DAT.	diēī	reī
ACCU.	diem	rem
ABL.	diē	rē

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	diēs	rēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus
ACCU.	diēs	rēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

467

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	bonus, bone	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACCU.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACCU.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum
GEN.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
DAT.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
ACCU.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
ABL.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
GEN.	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
DAT.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
ACCU.	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
ABL.	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	miser	miserā	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserāe	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserāe	miserō
ACCU.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

PLURAL

NOM., Voc.	miserī	miserāe	miserā
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACCU.	miserōs	miserās	miserā
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

THIRD DECLENSION

SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	audāx	audāx
GEN.	audācis	
DAT.	audācī	
ACCU.	audācem	audāx
ABL.	audācī	

PLURAL

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	audācēs	audācia
GEN.	audācium	
DAT.	audācibus	
ACCU.	audācis, -ēs	audācia
ABL.	audācibus	

SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	amāns	amāns
GEN.	amantis	
DAT.	amantī	
ACCU.	amantem	amāns
ABL.	amante, -ī	

PLURAL

	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantium	
DAT.	amantibus	
ACCU.	amantis, -ēs	amantia
ABL.	amantibus	

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER	MASC., FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis		fortium	
DAT.	forti		fortibus	
ACCU.	fortem	forte	fortis, -ēs	fortia
ABL.	forti		fortibus	

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER
NOM., Voc.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACCU.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
ABL.	ācri	ācri	ācri	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

469

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

Nine adjectives have **-ius** throughout in the Genitive Singular and **-ī** in the Dative Singular: **ūnus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **alius**, **alter**, **uter**, **neuter**. In the plural they are all declined like **bonus**. The following paradigms show the declension of four in the singular:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	utrius	utrius	utrius
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utri	utri	utri
ACCU.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō
NOM.	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
GEN.	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
DAT.	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
ACCU.	alium	aliam	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
ABL.	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

THE NUMERALS DUO AND TRĒS

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus
ACCU.	duōs (duo)	duās	duo	trēs, -īs	tria
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

470

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
GEN.		fortiōris		fortiōrum
DAT.		fortiōrī		fortiōribus
ACCU.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
ABL.		fortiōre		fortiōribus

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., Voc.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	_____	plūris		plūrium
DAT.	_____	_____		plūribus
ACCU.	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	_____	plūre		plūribus

471

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	pēior	pessimus
māgnus	māior	māximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	plūs	plūrimus

<i>facilis, easy</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
<i>difficilis, difficult</i>	<i>difficilior</i>	<i>difficillimus</i>
<i>similis, like</i>	<i>similior</i>	<i>simillimus</i>
<i>dissimilis, unlike</i>	<i>dissimilior</i>	<i>dissimillimus</i>
<i>humilis, low</i>	<i>humilior</i>	<i>humillimus</i>
<i>gracilis, slender</i>	<i>gracilior</i>	<i>gracillimus</i>
(posterī)	posterior, later	{ postrēmus, latest, last postumus, late born
(exterī)	exterior, outer	{ extrēmus } { extimus, } outermost
(inferī)	inferior, lower	{ infimus } { imus } lowest
(superī)	superior, higher	{ suprēmus, last summus, highest
POSITIVE (wanting)	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(Compare <i>prae, before</i>)	<i>prior, former</i>	<i>primus, first</i>
“ <i>citrā, this side of</i>)	<i>citerior, hither</i>	<i>citimus, hither- most</i>
“ <i>ultrā, beyond</i>)	<i>ulterior, farther</i>	<i>ultimus, farthest, last</i>
“ <i>in, intrā, in, within</i>)	<i>interior, inner</i>	<i>intimus, inmost</i>
“ <i>prope, near</i>)	<i>propior, nearer</i>	<i>proximus, near- est, next</i>

472

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bene, well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male, ill</i>	<i>pēius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>multum, much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>parum, (too) little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>diū, long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>
<i>saepe, often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
	<i>magis, more</i>	<i>māximē</i>

NUMERALS

CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1. ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>one</i>	prīmus, -a, -um, <i>first</i>	I
2. duo, duae, duo, <i>two</i>	secundus (alter), <i>second</i>	II
3. trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	tertius, <i>third</i>	III
4. quattuor	quārtus	IIII or IV
5. quīnque	quīntus	V
6. sex	sextus	VI
7. septem	septimus	VII
8. octō	octāvus	VIII
9. novem	nōnus	VIII or IX
10. decem	decimus	X
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus	XI
12. duodecim	duodecimus	XII
13. tredecim (decem et trēs)	tertius decimus	XIII
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	XIIII or XIV
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus	XV
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	XVI
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	XVII
18. duodēvigintī (octōdecim)	duodēvicēnsimus	XVIII
19. ūndēvigintī (novendecim)	ūndēvicēnsimus	XVIII or XIX
20. vīgintī	vicēnsimus	XX
21. vīgintī ūnus	vicēnsimus prīmus	XXI
(or ūnus et vīgintī)	(ūnus et vicēnsimus, etc.)	
30. trīgintā	trīcēnsimus	XXX
40. quadrāgintā	quādrāgēnsimus	XXXX or XL
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēnsimus	L
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēnsimus	LX
70. septuāgintā	septuāgēnsimus	LXX
80. octōgintā	octōgēnsimus	LXXX
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēnsimus	LXXXX or XC
100. centum	centēnsimus	C
101. centum (et) ūnus, etc.	centēnsimus prīmus, etc.	CI
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēnsimus	CC
300. trecentī	trecentēnsimus	CCC
400. quadringentī	quadringentēnsimus	CCCC
500. quīngentī	quīngentēnsimus	ID, or D
600. sescentī	sexcentēnsimus	DC
700. septingentī	septingentēnsimus	DCC
800. octingentī	octingentēnsimus	DCCC
900. nōngentī	nōngentēnsimus	DCCCC

	CARDINAL	ORDINAL	ROMAN
1,000.	mille	millēsimus	CIO, <i>or</i> M
5,000.	quīque milia	quīquēns millēsimus	IOO
10,000.	decem milia	decīēns millēsimus	CCIOO
100,000.	centum milia	centīēns millēsimus	CCCCIOO

PRONOUNS

474

PERSONAL AND REFLEXIVE

SINGULAR

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON	REFLEXIVE OF THE THIRD PERSON
NOM., VOC.	ego	tū	_____
GEN.	meī	tui	sui
DAT.	mihi, mi	tibi	sibi
ACCU.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
ABL.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	nōs	vōs	_____
GEN.	nostrum, nostri	vestrum, vestri	sui
DAT.	nōbis	vōbis	sibi
ACCU.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
ABL.	nōbis	vōbis	sē, sēsē

475

DEMONSTRATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	hic	haec	hōc
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius
DAT.	huic	huic	huic
ACCU.	hunc	hanc	hōc
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACCU.	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	illius	illius	illius
DAT.	illi	illi	illi
ACCU.	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	illi	illae	illa
GEN.	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illis	illis	illis
ACCU.	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illis	illis	illis

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	is	ea	id
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius
DAT.	eī	eī	eī
ACCU.	eum	eam	id
ABL.	eō	eā	eō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	eī, iī	eae	ea
GEN.	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
ACCU.	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	īdem	e'adem	īdem
GEN.	ēius'dem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACCU.	eun'dem	eandem	īdem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	{ eīdem iīdem	eaedem	e'adem
GEN.	eōrun'dem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	{ eīs'dem iīs'dem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem
ACCU.	eōs'dem	eāsdem	e'adem
ABL.	{ eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem	eīsdem iīsdem

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	iste	ista	istud
GEN.	istius	istius	istius
DAT.	istī	istī	istī
ACCU.	istum	istam	istud
ABL.	istō	istā	istō

PLURAL

NOM., VOC.	istī	istae	ista
GEN.	istōrum	istārum	istōrum
DAT.	istīs	istīs	istīs
ACCU.	istōs	istās	ista
ABL.	istīs	istīs	istīs

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
ACCU.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACCU.	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

476

RELATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	quī	quae	quod
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quam	quod
ABL.	quō	quā	quō

PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	qui	quae	quae
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACCU.	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

477

INTERROGATIVE

SINGULAR

	MASC., FEM.	NEUT.
NOM., VOC.	quis	quid
GEN.	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui
ACCU.	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quō

PLURAL

Like quī relative

(a) When the adjective form **quī** is used, the declension throughout coincides with that of the relative

478

INDEFINITE

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	aliquis (-quī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquid)
GEN.	alicū'ius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACCU.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquid)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

PLURAL

NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	ali'quibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACCU.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
GEN.	cūius'dam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cūīdam	cūīdam	cūīdam
ACCU.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACCU.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(a) *quisque*, *each*, *quisquam*, *any at all*; *sī quis*, *if any*, *nē quis*, *that not (lest) any* are all declined like *quis* (*quī*) interrogative.

REGULAR VERBS

479

FIRST CONJUGATION

Stem in *ā***amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus**

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

amō, *I love*
 amās, *thou lovest (you love)*
 amat, *he (she, it) loves*
 amāmus, *we love*
 amātis, *you love*
 amant, *they love*

PASSIVE

amor, *I am loved*
 amāris (-re), *you are loved*
 amātur, *he is loved*
 amāmur, *we are loved*
 amāmini, *you are loved*
 amantur, *they are loved*

IMPERFECT

amābam, *I loved, was loving*
 amābās, *you loved*
 amābat, *he loved*
 amābāmus, *we loved*
 amābātis, *you loved*
 amābant, *they loved*

amābar, *I was loved*
 amābāris (-re), *you were loved*
 amābātur, *he was loved*
 amābāmur, *we were loved*
 amābāmini, *you were loved*
 amābantur, *they were loved*

FUTURE

amābō, *I shall love*
 amābis, *you will love*
 amābit, *he will love*
 amābimus, *we shall love*
 amābitis, *you will love*
 amābunt, *they will love*

amābor, *I shall be loved*
 amāberis (-re), *you will be loved*
 amābitur, *he will be loved*
 amābimur, *we shall be loved*
 amābimini, *you will be loved*
 amābuntur, *they will be loved*

PERFECT

ACTIVE

amāvī, *I loved*
 amāvistī, *you loved*
 amāvit, *he loved*
 amāvimus, *we loved*
 amāvistis, *you loved*
 amāvērunt (-ēre), *they loved*

PASSIVE

amātus { sum, *I was loved*
 es, *you were loved*
 est, *he was loved*
 amātī { sumus, *we were loved*
 estis, *you were loved*
 sunt, *they were loved*

PLUPERFECT

amāveram, *I had loved*
 amāverās, *you had loved*
 amāverat, *he had loved*
 amāverāmus, *we had loved*
 amāverātis, *you had loved*
 amāverant, *they had loved*

amātus { eram, *I had been loved*
 erās, *you had been loved*
 erat, *he had been loved*
 amātī { erāmus, *we had been loved*
 erātis, *you had been loved*
 erant, *they had been loved*

FUTURE PERFECT

amāverō, *I shall have loved*
 amāveris, *you will have loved*
 amāverit, *he will have loved*
 amāverimus, *we shall have loved*
 amāveritis, *you will have loved*
 amāverint, *they will have loved*

amātus { erō, *I shall have been loved*
 eris, *you will have, etc.*
 erit, *he will have, etc.*
 amātī { erimus, *we shall have, etc.*
 eritis, *you will have, etc.*
 erunt, *they will have, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

amem

amēs

amet

amēmus

amētis

ament

amer

amēris (-re)

amētur

amēmur

amēmini

amentur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE

amārem
amārēs
amāret

amārēmus
amārētis
amārent

PASSIVE

amārer
amārēris (-re)
amārētur

amārēmur
amārēminī
amārentur

PERFECT

amāverim
amāverīs
amāverit

amāverimus
amāverītis
amāverint

amātus { sim
 { sis
 { sit

amātī { simus
 { sītis
 { sint

PLUPERFECT

amāvissem
amāvissēs
amāvisset

amāvissēmus
amāvissētis
amāvissent

amātus { essem
 { essēs
 { esset

amātī { essēmus
 { essētis
 { essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

amā, *love (thou)*
amāte, *love (ye)*

amāre, *be (thou) loved*
amāminī, *be (ye) loved*

FUTURE

amātō, *thou shalt love*
amātō, *he shall love*
amātōte, *ye shall love*
amantō, *they shall love*

amātor, *thou shalt be loved*
amātor, *he shall be loved*
—
amantor, *they shall be loved*

INFINITIVE

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRES.	amāre , <i>to love</i>	amārī , <i>to be loved</i>
PERF.	amāvisse , <i>to have loved</i>	amātus esse , <i>to have been loved</i>
FUT.	amātūrus esse , <i>to be about to love</i>	amātum iri , <i>to be about to be loved</i>

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	amāns, -antis , <i>loving</i>	GER.	amandus, -a, -um , <i>to be loved</i>
FUT.	amātūrus, -a, -um , <i>about to love</i>	PERF.	amātus, -a, -um , <i>loved, having been loved</i>

	GERUND		SUPINE
NOM.	—	ACCU.	amātum , <i>to love</i>
GEN.	amandī , <i>of loving</i>	ABL.	amātū , <i>to love, to be loved</i>
DAT.	amandō , <i>for loving</i>		
ACCU.	amandum , <i>loving</i>		
ABL.	amandō , <i>by loving</i>		

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

	ACTIVE	
	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	amātūrus sum , { <i>I am about to love</i>	amātūrus sim
IMPERF.	“ eram	“ essem
FUT.	“ erō	
PERF.	“ fui	“ fuerim
PLUP.	“ fueram	“ fuissem
FUT. PERF.	“ fuerō	

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amātūrus esse , <i>to be about to love</i>
PERF.	“ fuisse , <i>to have been about to love</i>

PASSIVE

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRES.	amandus sum,	{ <i>I have to (must)</i> <i>be loved</i>	amandus sim
IMPERF.	“ eram		“ essem
FUT.	“ erō		
PERF.	“ fui		“ fuerim
PLUP.	“ fueram		“ fuissem
FUT. PERF.	“ fuerō		

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amandus esse, <i>to have to be loved</i>
PERF.	“ fuisse, <i>to have had to be loved</i>

480

SECOND CONJUGATION

Stem in ē

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habeō, <i>I have</i> , etc.	habeor, <i>I am had</i> , held
habēs	habēris (-re)
habet	habētur
habēmus	habēmur
habētis	habēmini
habent	habentur

IMPERFECT

habēbam, <i>I was having</i> , etc.	habēbar, <i>I was had</i> , held
habēbās	habēbāris (-re)
habēbat	habēbātur
habēbāmus	habēbāmur
habēbātis	habēbāmini
habēbant	habēbantur

FUTURE

ACTIVE

habēbō, *I shall have, etc.*

habēbis

habēbit

habēbimus

habēbitis

habēbunt

PASSIVE

habēbor, *I shall be had, held*

habēberis (-re)

habēbitur

habēbimur

habēbimini

habēbuntur

PERFECT

habuī, *I have had, etc.*

habuisti

habuit

habitus	{	sum, <i>I have been</i>
		es [had, held]
		est

habuimus

habuistis

habuērunt (-ēre)

habitī	{	sumus
		estis
		sunt

PLUPERFECT

habueram, *I had had, etc.*

habuerās

habuerat

habitus	{	eram, <i>I had been</i>
		erās [had, held]
		erat

habuerāmus

habuerātis

habuerant

habitī	{	erāmus
		erātis
		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

habuerō, *I shall have had, etc.*

habueris

habuerit

habitus	{	erō, <i>I shall have been</i>
		eris [had, held]
		erit

habuerimus

habueritis

habuerint

habitī	{	erimus
		eritis
		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
habeam	habear
habeās	habeāris (-re)
habeat	habeātur
habeāmus	habeāmur
habeātis	habeāmini
habeant	habeantur

IMPERFECT

habērem	habērer
habērēs	habērēris (-re)
habēret	habērētur
habērēmus	habērēmur
habērētis	habērēmini
habērent	habērentur

PERFECT

habuerim	habitus	sim
habuerīs		sīs
habuerit		sit
habuerīmus	habitī	sīmus
habuerītis		sītis
habuerint		sint

PLUPERFECT

habuissem	habitus	essem
habuissēs		essēs
habuisset		esset
habuissēmus	habitī	essēmus
habuissētis		essētis
habuissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

habē, *have (thou)*habēre, *be (thou) had, held*habēte, *have (ye)*habēmini, *be (ye) had, held*

FUTURE

habētō, *thou shalt have*habētor, *thou shalt be had,*habētō, *he shall have*habētor, *he shall, etc. [held*habētōte, *ye shall have*habentō, *they shall have*habentor, *they shall be had,*
[held

INFINITIVE

PRES. habēre, *to have*habēri, *to be had*PERF. habuisse, *to have had*habitus esse, *to have been had*FUT. habitūrus esse, *to be*
*about to have*habitum iri, *to be about to*
be had

PARTICIPLES

PRES. habēns, -entis, *having*GER. habendus, -a, -um, *to*FUT. habitūrus, -a, -um,
*about to have**be had*
PERF. habitus, -a, -um, *had,*
having been had

GERUND

SUPINE

NOM. ———

ACCU. habitum

GEN. habendī

ABL. habitū

DAT. habendō

ACCU. habendum

ABL. habendō

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. habitūrus sum, *I am about to have.* Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. habendus sum, *I must be had.* Etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION

Stem in ě

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE	PRESENT	PASSIVE
regō, <i>I rule</i> , etc.	regor, <i>I am ruled</i> , etc.	
regis	regeris (-re)	
regit	regitur	
regimus	regimur	
regitis	regimini	
regunt	reguntur	

IMPERFECT

regēbam, <i>I was ruling</i> , etc.	regēbar, <i>I was ruled</i> , etc.
regēbās	regēbāris (-re)
regēbat	regēbātur
regēbāmus	regēbāmur
regēbātis	regēbāmini
regēbant	regēbantur

FUTURE

regam, <i>I shall rule</i> , etc.	regar, <i>I shall be ruled</i> , etc.
regēs	regēris (-re)
reget	regētur
regēmus	regēmur
regētis	regēmini
regent	regentur

PERFECT

rēxī, <i>I have ruled</i> , etc.	rēctus {	sum, <i>I have been</i>
rēxistī		es [ruled, etc.]
rēxit		est
rēximus	rēctī {	sumus
rēxistis		estis
rēxērunt (-re)		sunt

PLUPERFECT

ACTIVE

rēxeram, *I had ruled*, etc.

rēxerās

rēxerat

rēxerāmus

rēxerātis

rēxerant

PASSIVE

rēctus	{	eram, <i>I had been</i>
		erās [<i>ruled</i> , etc.]
		erat

rēcti	{	erāmus
		erātis
		erant

FUTURE PERFECT

rēxerō, *I shall have ruled*,

rēxeris

rēxerit

[etc. rēctus	{	erō, <i>I shall have been</i>
		eris [<i>ruled</i> , etc.]
		erit

rēxerimus

rēxeritis

rēxerint

rēcti	{	erimus
		eritis
		erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

regam

regās

regat

regāmus

regātis

regant

regar

regāris (-re)

regātur

regāmur

regāmini

regantur

IMPERFECT

regerem

regerēs

regeret

regerēmus

regerētis

regerent

regerer

regerēris (-re)

regerētur

regerēmur

regerēmini

regerentur

PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
rēxerim	rēctus	sim
rēxerīs		sīs
rēxerit		sit
rēxerimus	rēctī	simus
rēxerītis		sītis
rēxerint		sint

PLUPERFECT

rēxissem	rēctus	essem
rēxissēs		essēs
rēxisset		esset
rēxissēmus	rēctī	essēmus
rēxissētis		essētis
rēxissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
rege, rule (thou)	regere, be (thou) ruled
regite, rule (ye)	regiminī, be (ye) ruled

FUTURE

regitō, thou shalt rule	regitor, thou shalt be ruled
regitō, he shall rule	regitor, he shall be ruled
regitōte, ye shall rule	_____
reguntō, they shall rule	reguntor, they shall be ruled

INFINITIVE

PRES. regere, to rule	regī, to be ruled
PERF. rēxisse, to have ruled	rēctus esse, to have been ruled
FUT. rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule	rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled

PARTICIPLES

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
PRES.	regēns, <i>ruling</i>	GER.	regendus, -a, -um, <i>to be ruled</i>
FUT.	rēctūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to rule</i>	PERF.	rēctus, -a, -um, <i>ruled, having been ruled</i>
GERUND		SUPINE	
NOM.	—	ACCU.	rēctum
GEN.	regendi	ABL.	rēctū
DAT.	regendō		
ACCU.	regendum		
ABL.	regendō		

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. rectūrus sum, *I am about to rule.* Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. regendus sum, *I must be ruled.* Etc.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*Continued*)

Verbs in -iō

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
capiō, <i>I take, etc.</i>	capior, <i>I am taken, etc.</i>
capis	caperis (-re)
capit	capitur
capimus	capimur
capitis	capimini
capiunt	capiuntur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE
capiēbam

PASSIVE
capiēbar

FUTURE

capiam
capiēs
capiet, etc.

capiar
capiēris (-re)
capiētur, etc.

PERFECT

cēpī

captus sum

PLUPERFECT

cēperam

captus eram

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō

captus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

capiam
capiās
capiat
capiāmus
capiātis
capiant

capiar
capiāris (-re)
capiātur
capiāmur
capiāmini
capiantur

IMPERFECT

caperem

caperer

PERFECT

cēperim

captus sim

PLUPERFECT

cēpisset

captus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

cape, *take (thou)*capite, *take (ye)*

PASSIVE

capere, *be (thou) taken*capimini, *be (ye) taken*

FUTURE

capitō, *thou shalt take,*
etc.capitor, *thou shalt be taken,*
etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES. capere, *to take*capī, *to be taken*PERF. cēpisse, *to have taken*captus esse, *to have been*
*taken*FUT. captūrus esse, *to be*
*about to take*captum iri, *to be about to be*
taken

PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, *taking*GER. capiendus, -a, -um, *to*
*be taken*FUT. captūrus, -a, -um, *about*
*to take*PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken*

GERUND

GEN. capiendī, etc.

SUPINE

captum captū

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. captūrus sum, *I am about to take.* Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. capiendus sum, *I must be taken.* Etc.

483

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Stem in ī

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

ACTIVE

audiō, *I hear*, etc.

audīs

audit

audīmus

audītis

audiunt

PASSIVE

audior, *I am heard*, etc.

audīris (-re)

audītur

audīmur

audīmini

audiuntur

IMPERFECT

audiēbam, *I was hearing*, audiēbar, *I was heard*, etc.

audiēbās [etc. audiēbāris (-re)]

audiēbat audiēbātur

audiēbāmus audiēbāmur

audiēbātis audiēbāmini

audiēbant audiēbantur

FUTURE

audiam, *I shall hear*, etc. audiar, *I shall be heard*, etc.

audiēs audiēris (-re)

audiet audiētur

audiēmus audiēmur

audiētis audiēmini

audient audientur

PERFECT

ACTIVE		PASSIVE
audīvī, <i>I have heard</i> , etc.		
audīvisti	audītus	{ sum, <i>I have been</i>
audīvit		{ es [heard, etc.
		{ est
audīvimus		
audīvistis	audītī	{ sumus
audīvērunt (-re)		{ estis .
		{ sunt

PLUPERFECT

audīveram, <i>I had heard</i> , etc.		
audīverās	audītus	{ eram, <i>I had been</i>
audīverat		{ erās [heard, etc.
		{ erat
audīverāmus		
audīverātis	audītī	{ erāmus
audīverant		{ erātis
		{ erant

FUTURE PERFECT

audīverō, <i>I shall have heard</i> ,		
audīveris [etc.	audītus	{ erō, <i>I shall have</i>
audīverit [etc.		{ eris [been heard,
		{ erit [etc.
audīverimus		
audīveritis	audītī	{ erimus
audīverint		{ eritis
		{ erunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audiam	audiar
audiās	audiāris (-re)
audiat	audiātur
audiāmus	audiāmur
audiātis	audiāmini
audiant	audiantur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
audirem	audirer
audirēs	audirēris (-re)
audiret	audirētur
audirēmus	audirēmur
audirētis	audirēmini
audirent	audirentur

PERFECT

audiverim	auditus {	sim
audiveris		sīs
audiverit		sit
audiverimus	audīti {	simus
audiveritis		sītis
audiverint		sint

PLUPERFECT

audivissem	auditus {	essem
audivissēs		essēs
audivisset		esset
audivissēmus	audīti {	essēmus
audivissētis		essētis
audivissent		essent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

audī, <i>hear (thou)</i>	audīre, <i>be (thou) heard</i>
audīte, <i>hear (ye)</i>	audīmini, <i>be (ye) heard</i>

FUTURE

audītō, <i>thou shalt hear, etc.</i>	audītor, <i>thou shalt be heard,</i>
audītō	audītor [etc.]
audītōte	—
audiuntō	audiuntor

INFINITIVE

ACTIVE

PRES. **audire**, *to hear*
 PERF. **audivisse**, *to have*
 heard
 FUT. **audīturus esse**, *to be*
 about to hear

PASSIVE

audiri, *to be heard*
auditus esse, *to have been*
 heard
auditum iri, *to be about to*
 be heard

PARTICIPLES

PRES. **audiēns**, *hearing*

GER. **audiendus, -a, -um**, *to be*
 heard

FUT. **audīturus, -a, -um**,
 about to hear

PERF. **audītus, -a, -um**, *heard*,
 having been heard

GERUND

audiendī, -dō, -dum, -dō

SUPINE

auditum, auditū

(a) PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION

ACTIVE

PRES. **audīturus sum**, *I am about to hear.* Etc.

PASSIVE

PRES. **audiendus sum**, *I must be heard.* Etc.

DEPONENT VERBS

CONJ. I	hortor ,	hortārī ,	hortātus ,	<i>to urge</i>
CONJ. II	vereor ,	verērī ,	veritus ,	<i>to fear</i>
CONJ. III	sequor ,	sequī ,	secūtus	<i>to follow</i>
CONJ. IV	potior ,	potirī ,	potitus ,	<i>to get possession</i>

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	hortor	vereor	sequor	potior
	hortāris (-re)	verēris (-re)	sequeris (-re)	potīris (-re)
	hortātur	verētur	sequitur	potītur
	hortāmur	verēmur	sequimur	potīmur
	hortāminī	verēminī	sequimini	potīmini
	hortantur	verentur	sequuntur	potiuntur
IMPF.	hortābar	verēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
FUT.	hortābor	verēbor	sequar	potiar
PERF.	hortātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus
	eram	eram	eram	eram
F. P.	hortātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRES.	horter	verear	sequar	potiar
IMPF.	hortārer	verērer	sequerer	potīrer
PERF.	hortātus sim	veritus sim	secutus sim	potītus sim
PLUP.	hortātus	veritus	secutus	potītus
	essem	essem	essem	essem

IMPERATIVE

hortāre, etc. verēre, etc. sequere, etc. potīre, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRES.	hortārī	verērī	sequī	potīrī
PERF.	hortātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secutūrus	potitūrus
	esse	esse	esse	esse

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	hortāns	verēns	sequēns	potiēns
FUT.	hortātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
GER.	hortandus	verendus	sequendus	potiendus
PERF.	hortātus	veritus	secūtus	potītus

GERUND

hortandī,	verendī,	sequendī,	potiendī,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SUPINE

hortatūm, -tū veritūm, -tū secūtūm, -tū potitūm, -tū

(a) Notice that Deponent Verbs have the Active form of the Future Infinitive and the Participles of both voices.

IRREGULAR VERBS

485

Sum, esse, fui

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

SINGULAR

sum, *I am*
es, *you are*
est, *he (she, it) is*

PLURAL

sumus, *we are*
estis, *you are*
sunt, *they are*

IMPERFECT

eram, *I was*
erās, *you were*
erat, *he was*

erāmus, *we were*
erātis, *you were*
erant, *they were*

FUTURE

erō, *I shall be*
eris, *you will be*
erit, *he will be*

erimus, *we shall be*
eritis, *you will be*
erunt, *they will be*

PERFECT

fui, *I have been, was*
fuisti, *you have been, were*
fuit, *he has been, was*

fuimus, *we have been, were*
fuistis, *you have been, were*
fuerunt (-ēre), *they have been, were*

PLUPERFECT	
SINGULAR	PLURAL
fueram , <i>I had been</i>	fuerāmus , <i>we had been</i>
fuerās , <i>you had been</i>	fuerātis , <i>you had been</i>
fuerat , <i>he had been</i>	fuerant , <i>they had been</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	
fuerō , <i>I shall have been</i>	fuerimus , <i>we shall have been</i>
fueris , <i>you will have been</i>	fueritis , <i>you will have been</i>
fuerit , <i>he will have been</i>	fuerint , <i>they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	
sim	simus
sīs	sītis
sit	sint
IMPERFECT	
essem	essēmus
essēs	essētis
esset	essent
PERFECT	
fuerim	fuerīmus
fuerīs	fuerītis
fuerit	fuerint
PLUPERFECT	
fuissem	fuissēmus
fuissēs	fuissētis
fuisset	fuissent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT	
es , <i>be (thou)</i>	este , <i>be (ye)</i>
FUTURE	
estō , <i>thou shalt be</i>	estōte , <i>ye shall be</i>
estō , <i>he shall be</i>	suntō , <i>they shall be</i>

INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
PRES.	esse, <i>to be</i>	FUT.	futūrus, -a, -um, <i>about to be</i>
PERF.	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>		
FUT.	futūrus, esse (fore), <i>to be about to be</i>		

(a) possum, posse, potuī, *to be able, can*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	possum, <i>I can</i> potes, <i>you can</i> potest, <i>he can</i> possumus, <i>we can</i> potestis, <i>you can</i> possunt, <i>they can</i>		possim possis possit possimus possitis possint
IMPF.	poteram, <i>I could</i>		possem
FUT.	poterō, <i>I shall be able</i>		
PERF.	potuī, <i>I could</i>		potuerim
PLUP.	potueram, <i>I had been able</i>		potuissem
F. P.	potuerō, <i>I shall have been able</i>		
INFIN. PRES.	posse, <i>to be able</i>	PERF.	potuisse, <i>to have been able</i>
PART.	potēns (adj.), <i>powerful</i>		

(b) prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, *to help*

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	prōsum, <i>I help</i> prōdes prōdest prōsumus prōdestis prōsunt		prōsim prōsis prōsit prōsimus prōsitis prōsint

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
IMPF.	pröderam , <i>I was helping</i>	pröderessem
FUT.	pröderō , <i>I shall help</i>	
PERF.	prōfui , <i>I helped</i>	prōfuerim
PLUP.	prōfueram , <i>I had helped</i>	prōfuissem
F. P.	prōfuerō , <i>I shall have helped</i>	
IMPER.	prōdes , prōdestō , etc.	
INFIN. PRES.	prōdesse	PERF. prōfuisse FUT. prōfutūrus esse
PART.	prōfutūrus , <i>about to help</i>	

- 487 **volō**, **velle**, **volui**, —, *to be willing, will, wish*
 nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōlui**, —, *to be unwilling, will not*
 mālō, **mālle**, **mālui**, —, *to be more willing, prefer*

	INDICATIVE		
PRES.	volō , <i>I wish</i>	nōlō , <i>I will not</i>	mālō , <i>I prefer</i>
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvis
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
IMPF.	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
FUT.	volam , volēs , etc.	nōlam , nōlēs , etc.	mālam , mālēs , etc.
PERF.	volui	nōlui	mālui
PLUP.	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
F. P.	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

	SUBJUNCTIVE		
PRES.	velim	nōlim	mālim
	velis	nōlis	mālis
	velit	nōlit	mālit
	velimus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
	velitis	nōlītis	mālītis
	velint	nōlint	mālint

SUBJUNCTIVE (*continued*)

IMPF.	vellem	nöllem	mällem
PERF.	voluerim	nöluerim	mäluerim
PLUP.	voluissem	nöluissem	mäluissem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	_____	nöli	_____
		nölite	
FUT.	_____	nölitö, etc.	_____

INFINITIVE

PRES.	velle	nölle	mälle
PERF.	voluisse	nöluisse	mäluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volëns	nölëns	_____
-------	---------------	---------------	-------

488

1 eö, ire, (ivī) ii, itūrus, go

INDICATIVE

PRES.	eö, is, it
	imus, itis, eunt
IMPF.	ibam, ibās, ibat
	ibāmus, ibātis, ibant
FUT.	ibö, ibis, ibit
	ibimus, ibitis, ibunt
PERF.	(ivī), ii
PLUP.	(iveram) ieram
F. P.	(iverö) ierö

SUBJUNCTIVE

eam, eās, eat
eāmus, eātis, eant
irem, irēs, iret
irēmus, irētis, irent

IMPERATIVE

i, ite, itö, itö, itöte, euntö

INFINITIVE

PRES. ire	PERF. (ivisse) isse	FUT. itūrus esse
------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

PARTICIPLES

PRES. iēns, euntis	FUT. itūrus	GER. eundum
GERUND : eundi, -dō, -dum, -dō		SUPINE : itum, itū

(a) The compounds **adeō**, *approach*, **ineō**, *enter*, and some others, are transitive. They are inflected as follows in the passive :

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES. adeor	IMPF. adībar	PRES. adear	
adīris	FUT. adībor	IMPF. adīrer	
adītur	PERF. aditus sum	PERF. aditus sim	
adīmur	PLUP. aditus eram	PLUP. aditus essem	
adīminī	F. P. aditus erō	INFIN. adiri, aditus esse	
adeuntur		PART. aditus adeundus	

(b) In the perfect system of **eō** and its compounds the forms with **v** are extremely rare.

2 **fiō, fieri, factus sum, to be made, become**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRES.	fiō		fiam
	fīs		fiās
	fit		fiat
	fīmus		fiāmus
	fitis		fiātis
	fīunt		fiant
IMPF.	fiēbam		fierem
FUT.	fiam		
PERF.	factus sum		factus sim
PLUP.	factus eram		factus essem
F. P.	factus erō		
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	fī fīte	PRES.	fieri
FUT.	fitō fitōte	PERF.	factus esse
	fiūtō fiuntō	FUT.	factum iri

PARTICIPLES

PERF. **factus, -a, -um**GER. **faciendus, -a, -um**

489

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.
PRES.	ferō	feram	feror	ferar
	fers	ferās	ferris	ferāris (-re)
	fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
	ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
	fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
	ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
IMPF.	ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
FUT.	feram		ferar	
PERF.	tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
PLUP.	tuleram	tulisse	lātus eram	lātus essem
F. P.	tulerō		lātus erō	

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	fer	ferte	ferre	feriminī
FUT.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	—
	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	ferre	ferri
PERF.	tulisse	lātus esse
FUT.	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	ferēns	PERF.	lātus
FUT.	lātūrus	GER.	ferendus

GERUND : **ferendī, -dō, -dum, -dō** SUPINE : **lātum, -tū**

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

THE following vocabulary contains all the words used in the preceding lessons and in the account of Caesar's Invasion of Britain given in § 461; but the words given in the special vocabularies to the reading exercises are not repeated here. The present infinitive only is given of verbs conjugated like *amō*. The component parts of compound verbs are shown in parentheses immediately after the verbs; allied words follow the meanings as in the vocabularies to the lessons. A numeral after the meanings refers to the lesson in which the word is first used, unless preceded by the sign of a section. The few abbreviations will be readily understood.

A

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>ā, ab, adverbial prefix and prep. w. abl., <i>from, by</i>, 9.</p> <p>abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (ab + dō), <i>to put away, to hide</i>; sē abdere, <i>to hide one's self</i>; abditus, -a, -um, <i>hidden</i>, 51.</p> <p>abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ab + eō), <i>to go off, go away</i>, 47.</p> <p>absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus (ab + sum), <i>to be away, absent</i>, 13.</p> <p>āc, conj., see <i>atque</i>.</p> <p>accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (ad + cēdō), <i>to approach, draw near</i>, 49.</p> <p>accidō, -ere, -cidī, —, <i>to fall, happen</i>, 51.</p> <p>accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (ad + capiō), <i>to receive, accept, get</i>, 37.</p> <p>ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., <i>sharp, keen, active</i>, 21.</p> | <p>aciēs, -eī, f., <i>line of battle</i>, 26.</p> <p>ācritēr, adv., <i>sharply, eagerly</i> (ācer), 25.</p> <p>ad, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., <i>to, toward</i>; w. names of towns, <i>in the vicinity of</i>, 13.</p> <p>addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ad + dūcō), <i>to lead to, bring, induce</i>, 50.</p> <p>adeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (ad + eō), <i>to go to, approach</i>, 53.</p> <p>adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (ad + ferō), <i>to bear to, bring up</i>, 51.</p> <p>adflīctō, -āre, <i>to dash against, wreck, shatter</i>, § 461.</p> <p>adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctus, <i>to shatter, injure</i>, § 461.</p> <p>adgregō, -āre, <i>to gather, join</i>, § 461.</p> <p>adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus (ad + agō), <i>to drive to, hurl, cast</i>, § 461.</p> |
|--|---|

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, arrival, access* (adeō), 53.

adiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnetus, *to join to, attach, unite*, 55.

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtus, *to help, aid*, 28.

administrō, -āre, *to manage, carry on*, 15.

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ad + mitto), *to commit, allow, bring on one's self*, § 461.

adorior, -īrī, -ortus (ad + orior), *to rise up against, attack*, 44.

adpropinquō, -āre, *to approach* (propinquus), 17.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (ad + sum), *to be present*, 25.

adulēscēns, -ntis, adj., *young; as a substantive, young man*, 46.

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*, 31.

adversus, -a, -um, adj., *opposite, unfavorable*, 51.

aedificium, -ī, n., *building* (aedificō), 27.

aedificō, -āre, *to build*, 9.

aeger, **aegra**, **aegrum**, adj., *sick, feeble*, 7.

aegrē, adv., *feebly, with difficulty*, § 461.

Aemilius, -ī, m., *Aemilius*, 37.

aequinoctium, -ī, n., *equinox* (aequus, nox), § 461.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *level, equal, fair*, 39.

aes, **aeris**, n., *metal, copper, bronze*, § 461.

aestās, -ātis, f., *summer*, 20.

aestus, -ūs, m., *tide*, § 461.

aetās, -ātis, f., *age, time of life*, 39.

Africa, -ae, f., *Africa*, 32.

ager, **agrī**, m., *field, land*, 6.

agmen, -inis, n., *line of march* (agō), 26.

agō, -ere, -ēgī, -actus, *drive, lead, do, discuss; grātiās agere, to express thanks*, 32.

agricola, -ae, m., *farmer (ager)*, 4.

alacritās, -ātis, f., *eagerness, zeal*, § 461.

Alcibiadēs, -is, m., *Alcibiades*, 35.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *another's, others', foreign (alius)*, 56.

aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, some, any* (declined, § 478), 52.

alius, -a, -ud, adj., *another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another* (decl. § 469), 41.

alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other of two* (declined, § 469), 44.

altitūdō, -inis, f., *height (altus)*, 24.

altum, -ī, n., *the deep (altus)*, § 461.

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep*, 22.

amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship, alliance, friendly relations (amīcus)*, 11.

amīcus, -ī, m., *friend (amō)*, 4.

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (ā + mittō), *to let go, lose*, 31.

amō, -āre, *to love* (conj. § 479), 1.

amor, -ōris, m., *love, affection (amō)*, 17.

ancilla, -ae, f., *maid-servant*, 1.

ancora, -ae, f., *anchor*, § 461.

angustē, adv., *narrowly, closely (angustus)*, § 461.

- angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, close, confined*, § 461.
- animadvertō**, -ere, -vertī, -versus (animus + advertō), *to turn the mind to, notice*, 52.
- animal**, -ālis, n., *living being, animal*, 18.
- animus**, -ī, m., *mind, courage, soul*, 11.
- annus**, -ī, m., *year*, 20.
- ante**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *before*, 15.
- antequam** (ante + quam), conj., *before* (see § 367, n. 1), 47.
- anteā**, adv., *before, previously* (ante), 34.
- Antiochus**, -ī, m., *Antiochus*, 34.
- antīquus**, -a, -um, adj., *ancient, old* (ante), 6.
- apertus**, -a, -um, adj., *open, exposed, unprotected*, § 461.
- appellō**, -āre, *address, call, name*, 9.
- Appius**, -ī, m., *Appius*, 31.
- apud**, prep. w. accu., *with, before, by, near, among*, 17.
- Āpūlia**, -ae, f., *Apulia*, 37.
- aqua**, -ae, f., *water*, 27.
- aquila**, -ae, f., *eagle, standard*, of a legion, § 461.
- āra**, -ae, f., *altar*, 3.
- arbitror**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to think, suppose*, 41.
- arbor**, -oris, f., *tree*, 17.
- arcessō**, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, *to summon, send for*, § 461.
- argentum**, -ī, n., *silver, money*, 5.
- āridus**, -a, -um, adj., *dry*; neut. as substantive, **āridum**, -ī, *dry land, beach*, § 461.
- arma**, -ōrum, n. plur., *arms, weapons* (armō), 10.
- armāmenta**, -ōrum, n. plur., *equipment, tackle, rigging* (armō), § 461.
- armō**, -āre, *to arm, equip*, 21.
- arx**, arcis, f., *citadel*, 19.
- Asia**, -ae, f., *Asia*, 28.
- Athēniēnsis**, -e, adj., *Athenian*; as subst., *an Athenian*, 28.
- atque**, -āc, conj., *and, and also*, 31.
- Atrebās**, -ātis, adj., *Atrebatian*; **Atrebātēs**, -um, m. plur., *the Atrebates, a people of Belgic Gaul*, § 461.
- atrōx**, -ōcis, adj., *savage, frightful*, 22.
- attingō**, -ere, -tigī, -tactus, *to touch, reach*, § 461.
- auctōritās**, -ātis, f., *influence, authority*, 28.
- audācia**, -ae, f., *boldness, daring* (audāx), 16.
- audācter**, adv., *boldly* (audāx), 25.
- audāx**, -ācis, adj., *bold, daring* 21.
- audeō**, -ēre, ausus, semi-dep. v., *to dare* (see § 295), 38.
- audiō**, -īre, -īvī (-iī), -ītus, *to hear* (conj. § 483), 34.
- augeō**, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, magnify*, 28.
- aurīga**, -ae, m., *a charioteer, driver*, § 461.
- aut**, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*, 40.
- autem**, conj., *but, moreover, however*, 49.
- auxilior**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to help, aid* (auxilium), § 461.
- auxilium**, -ī, n., *help, assistance*, 7.

Avaricum, -ī, n., *Avaricum*, now
Bourges, 54.
avidus, -a, -um, adj., *eager*, 17.

B

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign*,
barbarian, 28.
beātus, -a, -um, adj., *happy*, *fortunate*, 23.
Belgae, -ārum, m. plur., *the Belgians*, 12.
bellum, -ī, n., *war*, 6.
bene, adv., *well* (*bonus*), 25.
beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness*, *favor*
(*bene*, *faciō*), 50.
bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good* (decl.
§§ 62, 467), 1 ff.
brevī, adv., *in a short time* (*brev-*
vis), § 461.
brevis, -e, adj., *brief*, *short*, 21.
Britannī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the*
Britons, 6.
Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*, *Eng-*
land, 3.

C

caedēs, -is, f., *slaughter*, *massacre*,
18.
caelum, -ī, n., *sky*, *heaven*, 27.
Caesar, -aris, m., (*Caius Julius*)
Caesar, 12.
campus, -ī, m., *field*, *plain*, 4.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, *captus*, *to take*,
seize, *capture* (conj. § 482), 33.
captīvus, -ī, m., *captive* (*capiō*),
27.
caput, -itis, n., *head*, 16.
Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., *Car-*
thaginian; as substantive, *a*
Carthaginian, 32.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear*, 2 ff.

Cassivelaunus, -ī, m., *Cassivelaun-*
us, a leader of the Britons, 49.
castra, -ōrum, n. plur., *a forti-*
fied camp, 13.
cāsus, -ūs, m., *accident*, *event*, *oc-*
currence, 49.
causa, -ae, f., *cause*, *reason*; abl.
causā w. gen., *for the sake of*,
10.
caveō, -ēre, cāvī, *cautus*, *to be*
on one's guard, *take care*, 45.
cēdō, -ere, cessī, *cessūrus*, *to*
withdraw, *yield*, 42.
celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift*,
quick, 23.
celeritās, -ātis, f., *swiftness*,
speed (*celer*), 30.
celeriter, adv., *swiftly*, *quickly*
(*celer*), 16.
centuriō, -ōnis, m., *centurion*, 41.
certē, adv., *certainly*, *at least*
(*certus*), § 461.
certus, -a, -um, adj., *fixed*, *deter-*
mined, *certain*; **aliquem cer-**
tiōrem facere, *to inform one*,
22.
cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., *all the rest*,
the others, 7.
Chersonēsus, -ī, f., *the Chersone-*
sus, a peninsula of Thrace, 28.
Cīneas, -ae, m., *Cīneas*, a friend
and envoy of king Pyrrhus, 31.
circiter, adv., *about* (with nu-
merals; *circum*), § 461.
circum, adverbial prefix and
prep. w. accu., *around*, 41.
circumdō, -āre, -dedī, -**datus**
(*circum* + *dō*), *to put around*,
surround, § 461.
circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, *to*
surround, *beset*, § 461.
circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-

- tus** (*circum + veniō*), *to come around, surround, invest*, 46.
- citō**, *adv., rapidly, quickly; superl. citissimē, with the greatest speed*, § 461.
- citerior, -ius**, *adj. comp., hither, nearer* (comp. § 471), 24.
- cīvis, -is**, *m. and f., citizen*, 18.
- cīvitās, -ātis**, *f., citizenship, state* (*cīvis*), 19.
- clādēs, -is**, *m., loss, disaster*, 18.
- clam**, *adv., secretly*, 33.
- clāmor, -ōris**, *m., shout*, 17.
- clārus, -a, -um**, *adj., bright, clear, famous*, 3 ff.
- classis, -is**, *f., fleet*, 31.
- Claudius, -ī**, *m., Claudius*, 31.
- cliēns, -entis**, *m., dependent, client*, 19.
- coepī, coepisse, coeptus**, *defect. v., to begin; the present system is supplied by incipiō, -ere*, 46.
- cōgitō, -āre**, *to think, consider, plan*, 53.
- cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus**, *to become acquainted with, learn, recognise*, 34.
- cōgō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus** (*cum + agō*), *to compel, force, collect*, 32.
- cohors, -hortis**, *f., a cohort, one tenth of a legion*, 19.
- cohortor, -ārī, -ātus** (*cum + hortor*), *dep. v., to encourage*, § 461.
- collis, -is**, *m., a hill*, 18.
- com-, con-, co-**, *adverbial prefix = cum, with, together*.
- comes, -itis**, *m. and f., a companion*, 15.
- commeātus, -ūs**, *m., transportation, supplies*, § 461.
- commendō, -āre**, *commit, entrust*, § 461.
- commilitō, -ōnis**, *m., fellow-soldier* (*mīles*), § 461.
- committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus** (*cum + mittō*), *to engage in battle*, 31.
- Commius, -ī**, *m., Commius, a chief of the Atrebatas*, § 461.
- commodē**, *adv., conveniently, fitly, easily*, § 461.
- commūnis, -e**, *adj., common*, 50.
- comparō, -āre** (*cum + parō*), *to get ready, prepare*, 14.
- compleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētus**, *to fill, cover*, 47.
- complūrēs, -a or -ia**, *adj. plur., several, a good many*, 45.
- comprehendō, -ere, prehendi, prehēnsus**, *to arrest, seize*, 53.
- concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus** (*cum + cēdō*), *to yield, withdraw*, 47.
- concilium, -ī**, *n., council, conference*, 14.
- concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursūrus**, *to run together*, 54.
- condiciō, -ōnis**, *f., terms*, 32.
- cōnfertus, -a, -um**, *adj., crowded, close*, § 461.
- cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus** (*cum + ferō*), *to bring together*, 53.
- cōnfestim**, *adv., promptly, hastily*, § 461.
- cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus** (*cum + faciō*), *to finish, perform, wear out*, 45.
- cōnfidō, -ere, -fīsus** (*cum + fidō*), *to trust, be confident*, 38.

cōnfirmō, -āre, to strengthen, establish, 20.
cōniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, to throw together, cast, hurl, § 461.
coniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tus, to join together, unite, 54.
coniūnx, -iugis, m. or f., husband or wife (coniungō), 15.
coniūratiō, -ōnis, f., conspiracy, plot (coniūrō), § 461.
coniūrō, -āre, to swear together, plot, conspire, 12.
conlocō, -āre, to station, place, 18.
conloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, dep. v., to converse, 54.
cōnor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to attempt, 36.
cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēn-sus, to mount, go on board ship, § 461.
cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus (cum + sequor), dep. v., to overtake, 37.
cōnsilium, -ī, n., plan, design, counsel, 13.
cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to take a position, stand, halt, 43.
cōnspiciō, -ēre, -spexī, -spectus, to see, make out, observe, § 461.
cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitū-tus, to establish, place, station, 41.
cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, -statūrus, to agree; impers., it is agreed, is an established fact, 51.
cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, to become accustomed, 51.
cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f., custom, habit, 51.
cōnsul, -is, m., consul, 17.
cōnsulō, -ere, cōnsulūī, cōn-sultus, to have regard for, care

for, consult; **aliquem cōn-sulere**, to consult a person; **alicui cōnsulere**, to look out for a person's interests, 49.
contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, to exert one's self, hasten, 32.
continēns, -ntis, m., mainland, continent, § 461.
contineō, -ere, -tinuī, -tentus (cum + teneō), to hold back, keep in check, 27.
continuus, -a, -um, adj., consecutive, successive, 20.
contrā, prep. w. accu., against, 12.
conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (cum + veniō), to come together, assemble, 42.
convocō, -āre (cum + vocō), to call together, assemble, 13.
coōrior, -īrī, -ortus (cum + orior), arise, spring up, § 461.
cōpia, -ae, f., plenty, abundance; plur. **cōpiae**, troops, forces, 11.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn, wing of an army, 26.
corpus, -oris, n., body, 17.
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, adj., daily (cotīdiē), 38.
cotīdiē, adv., every day, daily, 36.
crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., frequent, numerous, 51.
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame, § 461.
cum, conj., when, because, since, although (see §§ 374-376), 48.
cum, prep. w. abl., with, 6.
cunctātor, -ōris, m., the Delayer, a term applied to Quintus Fabius Maximus (cunctor), 33.
cunctor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to delay, § 461.

cupiō, -ere, -īvi (-iī), -ītus, to desire, be eager, 33.

cūr, adv., why ? 30.

cūra, -ae, f., care (**cūrō**), 2.

cūrō, -āre, to care for ; w. gerundive, to have a thing done, 4.

currus, -ūs, m., chariot, § 461.

cursus, -ūs, m., running, speed, 54.

custōs, -ōdis, m., a guard, 15.

D

dē, prep. w. abl., from, about, concerning, 9.

dē, adverbial prefix, down from, away from.

dea, -ae, f., goddess (**deus**) ; dat. and abl. plur., **deābus**, 3.

dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, owe, ought, 44.

decem, -ae, indeclin., ten, 23.

dēcertō, -āre, to fight, 13.

decimus, -a, -um, adj., tenth (**decem**), § 461.

dēclīvis, -e, adj., sloping down, down hill, § 461.

dedecus, -oris, n., disgrace, § 461.

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus (dē + dō), give up, surrender, 34.

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (dē + dūcō), to lead away, withdraw, 33.

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, to defend, 33.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (dē + ferō), to bring down, report, 55.

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, wearied, 45.

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (dē + faciō), to fail, be wanting, 48.

dēiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (dē + iaciō), to throw down, cast, § 461.

deinde, adv., then, secondly, next, 32.

dēligō, -āre, to bind fast, moor, § 461.

dēlitēscō, -ere, -lituī, —, to hide, conceal, § 461.

dēmessus, -a, -um, perf. part. of the following verb.

dēmetō, -ere, -messuī, -messus, to reap, cut down, § 461.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, to point out, show, 53.

dēnique, adv., finally, 33.

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (dē + pōnō), to put off, lay aside, § 461.

dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultus, to leap down, jump overboard, § 461.

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to cease, cease from, give up, 40.

dēspērō, -āre (dē + spērō), to give up hope, despair, 38.

dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (dē + sum), to fail, 38.

dēterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus (dē + terreō), to frighten off, deter, 33.

deus, -ī, m., god, 10.

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, on the right hand, 26.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, to say, tell, speak, 31.

dīēs, -ēī, m., a day, time, 26.

differō, -ferre, distulī, dīlātus (dis + ferō), to spread, scatter ; in the pres. system, to differ, 54.

difficilis, -e, adj., difficult (**facilis** ; compared, § 471), 23.

difficultās, -ātis, f., difficulty, trouble (difficilis), 41.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy; w. abl., worthy of, 40.

diligentia, -ae, f., care, pains, attention, 11.

dīmicō, -āre, to fight, 21.

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (dis + mittō), to send away, let go, 39.

dis-, dī-, dif-, adverbial prefix, apart, away.

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (dis + cēdō), to go away, depart, 42.

discessus, -ūs, m., departure (discēdō), 55.

dispersus, -a, -um, perf. part. of dispergō, to scatter, § 461.

dissimilis, -e, adj., unlike (similis; compared § 471), 23.

diū, adv., long, 10.

diūtius, adv., comp. of diū.

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, to divide, separate, 50.

dō, dāre, dēdī, dātus, to give, 2 ff.

dolor, -ōris, m., pain, grief, 37.

dominus, -ī, m., master, owner, 4.

domus, -ūs, f., house, home (decl. § 465), 42.

dōnum, -ī, n., gift (dō), 5.

dubitō, -āre, to doubt, hesitate (dubius), 33.

dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, 10.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, to lead (dux), 32.

dum, conj., while, so long as, until, 47.

duodecim, adj. indeclin., twelve, § 461.

duodēvīgintī, adj. indeclin., eighteen, § 461.

uplicō, -āre, to double (duo), § 461.

dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, 22.

dux, ducis, m. or f., leader, 15.

E

ē, ex, prep. w. abl., out of, from, 18.

ē-, ex-, ef-, adverbial prefix, out of, out, completely.

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (ē + dūcō), to lead forth, lead out, 46.

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (ex + faciō), to accomplish, 33.

effugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus (ex + fugiō), to escape, § 461.

ēius modī, adj. phrase, of that sort, such, 37.

egēns, -ntis, adj., needy, poor, 22.

egō, -meī, pers. pron., I (declined § 474), 40.

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., to go out, depart, 49.

Ēlis, -idis, f., Elis, a district in the western Peloponnesus, 36.

enim, conj., for (compare nam), 30.

eō, -ire, (ivī) iī, itūrus, to go (conjugated § 488), 46.

eō, adv., to that place (is), 49.

eōdem, adv., to the same place (īdem), 55.

Ēpīrus, -ī, f., Epirus, a district in northwestern Greece, 31.

epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle (compare littera), 2.

eques, -itis, m., horseman, knight (equus), 19.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., *belonging to the cavalry, equestrian* (*eques*), 21.

equitātus, -ūs, m., *horsemen, cavalry* (*eques*), 26.

equus, -ī, m., *horse*, 7.

errō, -āre, *to wander, stroll*, 4 ff.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f., *sally, sortie*, 47.

essedā, -ae, f., or **essedum, -ī**, n., *a war-chariot*, § 461.

essedārius, -a, -um, *one who fights from a chariot, a charioteer* (*essedā*), § 461.

et, conj., *and*; **et . . . et**, *both . . . and*, 1.

etiam, adv. and conj., *also, even*, 19.

etsī (et + sī), conj., *even if, although*, 39.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., *Europe*, 28.

ēveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (**ē + veniō**), *to result*, § 461.

ēventus, -ūs, m., *outcome, event*, § 461.

excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (**ex + cēdō**), *to go out from, depart*, 55.

excitō, -āre, *to arouse*, 45.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (**ex + eō**), *to go out, leave, depart*, 50.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, *practice, training*, § 461.

exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*, 26.

exiguitās, -ātis, f., *scantiness, shortness* (*exiguus*), § 461.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *small, scanty, short*, § 461.

existimō, -āre, *to reckon, think*, 42.

expediō, -īre, -ivī (iī), -ītus, *to get ready, arrange* (compare **impediō**), 35.

expeditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **expediō**, *unencumbered, lightly burdened*, 46.

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (**ex + pellō**), *to drive out*, 36.

experior, -īrī, -pertus, dep. v., *to try, prove, experience*, 37.

explōrō, -āre, *to seek, search out, investigate*, § 461.

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (**ex + pōnō**), *to set forth, display*, § 461.

expūgnō, -āre (**ex + pūgnō**), *to capture by storm* (compare **op-pūgnō**), 11.

exspectō, -āre, *to look out for, wait for, expect*, 13.

exterior, -ius, comp. of **exterus**.

exterus, -a, -um, adj., *outer, foreign* (rare in positive; compared, § 471), 24.

extrā, prep. w. accu., *outside of*, 47.

extrēmus, -a, -um, super. of **exterus**, *last, farthest*, 24.

F

Fabius, -ī, m., *Fabius*, a famous Roman general, 33.

fābula, -ae, f., *story*, 1.

facile, adv., *easily* (**facilis**), 25.

facilis, -e, adj., *easy* (compared § 471), 23.

faciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, *to do, make*; pass., **fīō, flerī, factus** (§ 488), 33.

facultās, -ātis, f., *opportunity*, 45.

fāma, -ae, f., *fame, reputation, report*, 3.

fēliciter, adv., *happily, luckily, successfully*, 25.

ferē, adv., *nearly, about, almost*, 44.

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, *to bear, carry* (conjugated § 489), 51.

fidēlis, -e, adj., *faithful*, § 461.

fidēs, -eī, f., *faith, pledge* (**fidō**), 29.

fidō, -ere, **fīsus**, semi-dep. v., *to trust*, 37.

figūra, -ae, f., *shape*, § 461.

filia, -ae, f., *daughter*; dat. and abl. plur., **filiābus** (**fīlius**), 2.

filius, -ī, m., *son*; voc. sing., **fili**, 5.

finis, -is, m., *end, limit*; plur., *boundaries, territory*, 18.

finitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighboring, bordering on*; m. plur. as subst., *neighbors* (**fīnis**), 11.

fiō, **flerī**, **factus**, pass. of **faciō**, *to be made, happen, result* (conjugated, § 488), 46.

firmiter, adv., *firmly, steadily*, § 461.

flectō, -ere, **flexī**, **flexus**, *to turn, direct, guide*, § 461.

fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave*, § 461.

flūmen, -inis, n., *river*, 19.

fore, fut. inf. of **sum**, = **futūrum esse**, § 461.

fortis, -e, adj., *brave*, 21.

fortiter, adv., *bravely* (**fortis**), 10.

fortitūdō, -inis, f., *bravery* (**fortis**), 28.

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*, 42.

fossa, -ae, f., *ditch*; **fossam dūcere**, *to dig a ditch*, 43.

frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus**, *to break*, § 461.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother*, 18.

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus, *to get grain, forage* (**frūmentum**), § 461.

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain, supplies*, 11.

fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus**, dep. v., *to enjoy*, 38.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain*, 49.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight* (**fugō**, **fugiō**), 19.

fugiō, -ere, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus**, *to flee* (**fuga**, **fugō**), 33.

fugō, -āre, *to put to flight* (**fuga**, **fugiō**), 5.

funda, -ae, f., *sling*, § 461.

fūnis, -is, m., *a rope, cable*, § 461.

G

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, 10.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic* (**Gallus**), § 461.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *of Gaul, Gallic*; as subst., *a Gaul* (**Gallia**), 10.

gaudeō, -ēre, **gavīsus**, semi-dep. v., *to rejoice*, 37.

gēns, **gentis**, f., *family, tribe, clan*, 19.

genus, -eris, n., *kind, family, race*, § 461.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German*; as subst., *a German*, 16.

gerō, -ere, **gessī**, **gestus**, *to carry on, perform*, 31.

gladius, -ī, m., *sword*, 5.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*, 3.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*; as a subst., *a Greek*, 28.

grātia, -ae, f., *gratitude, favor, kindness*; **grātiās agere**, *to thank*; **grātiām habēre**, *to feel*

grateful; **grātiā** *referre*, to repay a favor, 5.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasing, agreeable, grateful* (**grātia**), 3.

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe, serious*, 22.

graviter, adv., *severely, seriously* (**gravis**), 39.

grex, **gregis**, m., *flock, herd*, 15.

H

habeō, -ere, **habuī**, **habitus**, to have, hold; **grātiā** *habēre*, to feel grateful; **ōrātiōnem** *habēre*, to deliver a speech, 2 ff.

habitō, -āre, to live, dwell (**habēō**), 3 ff.

Haeduī, -ōrum, m. plur., the *Haeduians*, an important people of Gaul, living between the Loire and the Saône, 12.

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal*, the famous leader of the Carthaginians in the Second Punic War, 33.

Hasdrubal, -alis, m., *Hasdrubal*, brother of Hannibal, 40.

hasta, -ae, f., *spear*, 10.

herba, -ae, f., *grass*, 7.

hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur., *winter quarters*, 27.

hic, *haec*, **hōc**, demonstr. pron., *this*; **hic** . . . **ille**, *the latter*, . . . *the former* (declined § 475), 12.

hic, adv., *here, in this place*, 13.

hiemō, -ōre, to spend the winter, *winter* (**hiems**), 20.

hiems, **hiemis**, f., *winter*, 20.

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain* (**Hispānus**), 34.

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish*; as a subst., a *Spaniard* (**Hispānia**), 39.

hodiē, adv. (**hoc** + **diē**), *to-day*, 29.

homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man* (compare **vir**), 17.

honor, -ōris, m., *honor*, 17.

hōra, -ae, f., *hour, season*, 20.

Horātius, -ī, m., *Horace*, a famous Latin poet, 5.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to encourage, urge, exhort, 36.

hortus, -ī, m., *garden*, 4.

hostis, -is, m., *enemy*, 18.

hūc, adv., to this place, *hither* (**hīc**), 53.

humilis, -e, adj., *low* (compared § 471), 23.

I

iam, adv., *already, now*, 13.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place* (**is**), 3.

idem, **eadem**, **idem**, demons. pron., *the same* (decl. § 475; **is**), 40.

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable*, 13.

īgnis, -is, m., *fire*, 18.

īgnōscō, -ere, **īgnōvī**, **īgnōtus**, to pardon (see § 411), § 461.

īgnōtus, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*, § 461.

ille, **illa**, **illud**, demons. pron., *that*; **ille** . . . **hic**, *the former* . . . *the latter* (decl. § 475), 12.

illō, adv., to that place (**ille**) § 461.

impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; plur., *baggage* (**impe-diō**), 25.

- impediō, -īre, -īvi (-iī), -ītus, to hinder, 34.**
- impeditus, -a, -um, perf. part. of impediō, hindered, entangled, embarrassed, § 461.**
- imperātor, -ōris, m., general (imperō), 27.**
- imperītus, -a, -um, adj., unskilled (perītus), 41.**
- imperium, -ī, n., a command (imperō), 27.**
- imperō, -āre, to command, order, 22.**
- impetrō, -āre, to obtain one's request, 18.**
- impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, 27.**
- imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly, 44.**
- imprūdētia, -ae, f., lack of foresight, thoughtlessness, indiscretion, § 461.**
- īmus, -a, -um, superlative of īnferus, lowest (see § 471), 24.**
- in, prep. w. accu. and abl., into, in, within, 4 and 14.**
- in-, adverbial prefix w. verbs, in, upon, towards; negative prefix w. adjectives, not.**
- incendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, to set fire to, burn, kindle, 35.**
- incertus, -a, -um, adj., uncertain (certus), 45.**
- incitō, -āre, to urge on, arouse, incite, 11.**
- incōgnītus, -a, -um, adj., unknown (compare cōgnōscō), § 461.**
- incola, -ae, m., inhabitant (incolō), 9.**
- incolō, -ere, -coluī, —, to dwell, inhabit, 49.**
- incolumis, -e, adj., unharmed, 36.**
- inde, adv., from that place, thence, then, 54.**
- indīgnus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy; w. abl., unworthy of (dīgnus), 32.**
- ineō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (in + eō), to go into, enter, begin, 49.**
- īnferior, -ius, comp. of īnferus, lower (§ 471), 24.**
- īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (in + ferō), to carry, bring upon, 51.**
- īnferus, -a, -um, adj., low (compared § 471), 24.**
- īnfīmus, -a, -um, superl. of īnferus, lowest, 24.**
- īnfīrmus, -a, -um, adj., weak, infirm, § 461.**
- īnfra, prep. w. accu., below, 54.**
- ingēns, -ntis, adj., great, huge, serious, 32.**
- inimīcus, -a, -um, unfriendly; as subst., private enemy (amīcus), 10.**
- inīquus, -a, -um, adj., unequal, unfair (aequus), 41.**
- iniūria, -ae, f., wrong, injury, outrage, 34.**
- inopia, -ae, f., want, lack, need, dearth, 11.**
- inquit, defect. v., said he, used in direct quotations, 36.**
- īnsīgnis, -e, adj., marked, remarkable, notable, 23.**
- īnsinuo, -āre, to thrust in, make way into, § 461.**
- īnsistō, -ere, -stitī, —, to stand upon, keep one's footing, § 461.**
- īnstābilis, -e, adj., unsteady, uncertain, § 461.**

īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *practice, custom, institutions* (īnstituō), § 461.

īnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, *to begin, establish*, 45.

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *arrange, draw up*, 48.

īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, perf. part. of **īnsuēfaciō**, *trained, accustomed*, § 461.

īnsula, -ae, f., *island*, § 461.

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, fresh*, 51.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to understand*, 42.

inter, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *between, among*, 12.

interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, *to cut off*, 47.

interea, adv., *meanwhile* (inter), 12.

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (inter + faciō), *to kill*, 35.

interim, adv., *in the meantime* (inter), 43.

interior, -ius, comp. adj., *inner* (compared § 471; inter), 24.

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (inter + mittō), *to stop, interrupt, let pass*, 44.

interpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (inter + pōnō), *to put between, interpose*, § 461.

intimus, -a, -um, superl. of **interior**, *innermost* (compared § 471), 24.

intrō, -āre, *to enter*, 12.

īnūsītātus, -a, -um, adj., *unaccustomed*, § 461.

īnūtilis, -e, adj., *useless*, § 461.

īnvītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*, 36.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intens. demons. pron., *self, very* (declined § 475), 40.

is, ea, id, demons. pron., *that; he, she, it* (declined § 475), 14.

iste, ista, istud, demons. pron., *that, that of yours* (declined § 475), 40.

ītalīa, -ae, f., *Italy*, 3.

ita, adv., *thus, in that way* (is), 21.

itaque, adv., *therefore* (ita), 4.

item, adv., *likewise, also* (is), 54.

iter, itineris, n., *journey, march*, 17.

iterum, adv., *again, a second time*, 31.

iubeō, -ēre, **iussī, iussus**, *to command, order*, 40.

iūdex, -icis, m., *judge* (iūs), 15.

iūdicō, -āre, *to judge* (iūdex, iūs), 40.

iugum, -ī, n., *yoke, ridge*, 50.

īlīa, -ae, f., *Julia*, 1.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice, law*, 56.

iuvenis, -is, m., *a youth* (iuventus), 28.

iuventus, -ūtis, f., *youth; collectively, young men, the youth*, 21.

iuvō, -āre, **iūvī, iūtus**, *to help, aid*, 13.

L

labor, -ōris, m., *work, labor*, 17.

labōrō, -āre, *to work, toil* (labor), 4.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., *Lacedaemon, Sparta*, 36.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., *Lacedaemonian, Spartan*, 32.

- laccessō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, to** provoke, challenge, harass, 49.
laetē, adv., gladly, 25.
lātē, adv., broadly, widely (lātus), 55.
lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, 1.
latus, -eris, n., side, flank, 46.
laudō, -āre, to praise (laus), 3 ff.
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory, 16.
lēgatiō, -ōnis, f., embassy, legation (lēgātus), 31.
lēgātus, -ī, m., envoy, ambassador, lieutenant (lēgatiō), 14.
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion, 19.
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectus, to read, 48.
lenis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, § 461.
levis, -e, adj., light, slight, 24.
leviter, adv., lightly, 25.
liber, -era, -erum, adj., free, 7.
liber, librī, m., a book, 6.
liberāliter, adv., generously, kindly (liber), § 461.
liberī, -ōrum, m. plur., freeborn children (liber), 6.
liberō, -āre, to free (liber), 7.
libertās, -ātis, f., liberty, freedom (liber), 36.
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers. v., it is permitted, one may, 33.
lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language, 54.
littera, -ae, f., letter, of the alphabet; plur., a letter, an epistle, 48.
lītus, -oris, n., shore, § 461.
locus, -ī, m., place, spot; plur. loca, n., places, situation; locī, m., topics, 13.
longē, adv., far off, at a distance, by far (longus), 13.
longinquus, -a, -um, adj., long, far, remote (longus), 54.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant, 1 ff.
loquor, -ī, locūtus, dep. v., to speak, talk, 38.
lūna, -ae, f., the moon, § 461.
lupa, -ae, f., she-wolf, 9.
lupus, -ī, m., wolf, 5.
lūx, lūcis, f., light, 15.

M

- magis, adv. comp., more; superl. māximē, most (compared § 472; māgnus),** 25.
magister, -trī, m., master, teacher, 6.
magistrātus, -ūs, m., magistracy, office, a magistrate (magister), 35.
māgnitūdō, -inis, f., size, greatness (māgnus), 40.
māgnoperē, adv., greatly, 16.
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., great, large, loud (compared § 471), 1 ff.
māior, -ius, adj., comp. of māgnus, larger, elder; māiōrēs, elders, ancestors, 29.
male, adv., badly, ill, unsuccessfully (malus), 25.
mālō, mälle, mālūī (magis + volō), to prefer, 44.
malus, -a, -um, adj., bad, ill, 2 ff.
mandāta, -ōrum, n. plur., orders, commands (mandō), § 461.
mandō, -āre, entrust, commit, command, § 461.
māne, adv., in the morning, early, 39.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, to remain, 27.

manus, -ūs, f., band, company, troop, 26.

Marcus, -ī, m., Marcus, 4.

mare, maris, n., sea, 18.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to the sea, maritime (mare), 50.

māter, -tris, f., mother, 22.

māteria, -ae, f., stuff, timber, § 461.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., early, ripe, § 461.

māximē, superl. adv., most, 25.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, in the middle of, 27.

membrum, -ī, n., limb, of the body, § 461.

memoria, -ae, f., memory, 29.

mercātor, -ōris, m., trader, merchant, 45.

metō, -ere, messuī, messus, to reap, cut, § 461.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., mine, 3.

mīles, -itis, m., soldier, private, 15.

mīlitāris, -e, adj., relating to a soldier; military; **rēs mīlitāris**, the science of war (mīles), 44.

mīlle, adj. indeclin., a thousand; plur. **mīlia**, -ium; the plural is used as a substantive, while the singular is an adjective, 30.

Miltiadēs, -is, m., Miltiades, the Greek commander at Marathon, 480 B. C., 28.

minimē, adv., superl. of **minus**, least (compared § 472), 25.

minor, **minus**, adj., comp. of **parvus**, less, smaller (compared § 471), 24.

minus, comp. adv., less, 25.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, unfortunate, 7.

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missus, to send, throw (weapons), 31.

mōbilitās, -ātis, f., quickness, speed, § 461.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., to control, manage, § 461.

modo, adv., only, but, even; **nōn modo**, not only, 40.

modus, -ī, m., manner, measure, 31.

moenia, -ium, n. plur., walls of a city, fortifications, 18.

mōns, **montis**, m., mountain, hill; **summus mōns**, top of the hill, 19.

mora, -ae, f., delay, 14.

Morinī, -ōrum, m. plur., the Morini, a people living in Belgic Gaul, § 461.

morior, **morī**, **mortuus**, dep. v. to die (mors), 39.

moror, -ārī, **morātūs**, to delay (mora), 38.

mors, **mortis**, f., death (morior), 19.

mōs, **mōris**, m., habit, customs, 35.

mōtus, -ūs, m., movement, disturbance, uprising (moveō), § 461.

moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, to move; **castra movēre**, to break camp; **sīgna movēre**, to advance, 29.

mulier, -eris, f., woman, 22.

multitūdō, -inis, f., crowd, multitude, 30.

multō, adv., (*by*) *much, by far* (*multus*), 23.

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much*; plur., *many* (compared § 471), 2 ff.

mūniō, -īre, -ivī (iī), -itus, *to fortify*, 36.

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *fortification, defenses* (*mūniō*), 48.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*, 9.

Mūsa, -ae, f., *a muse*, 5.

N

nam, conj., *for* (*compare enim*), 14.

namque, conj., *for*, § 461.

nanciscor, -ī, nactus, dep. v., *to find*, 39.

narrō, -āre, *to tell, narrate*, 2 ff.

nāscor, -ī, nātus, dep. v., *to be born*, 48.

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *race, nation* (*nāscor*), 27.

nātūra, -ae, f., *nature* (*nāscor*), 13.

nauta, -ae, m., *sailor* (*nāvigō*), 3.

nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., *sailing, voyage, navigation* (*nāvigō*), § 461.

nāvigium, -ī, n., *a boat*, § 461.

nāvigō, -āre, *to sail* (*nāvis*), 4 ff.

nāvis, -is, f., *ship*; *nāvis longa*, *man-of-war*, 19.

-ne, interrogative enclitic, 1.

nē, adv. and conj., *not, that not, in order that not, lest*; *nē . . .*

quidem, *not even*, 29, 40.

nec, *see neque*.

necessāriō, adv., *necessarily, of necessity* (*necessārius*), § 461.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, needful* (*necesse*), 28.

necesse, adj. indeclin., *necessary*; *necesse est*, *one must*, 39.

necō, -āre, *to kill*, 26.

nēmō, *neminis*, m., *no one, nobody*, 23.

nēquāquam, adv., *not at all, by no means*, § 461.

neque, conj., *and not*; *neque . . . neque*, *neither . . . nor*, 17.

Nerviī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Nervii*, a tribe of Belgic Gaul, 12.

neuter, *neutra*, *neutrum* (*nē + uter*), *neither* (declined § 469), 52.

niger, *nigra*, *nigrum*, adj., *black*, 7.

nihil, n. indeclin., *nothing*, 23.

nisi, conj. (*nē + sī*), *if not, unless*, 39.

noceō, -ēre, *nocuī*, *nocitūrus*, *to harm, injure*; *nocēns*, *hurtful, guilty*, 46.

noctū, adv., *by night* (*nox*), 46.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *by night, in the night* (*nox*), 48.

nōlō, *nōlle*, *nōluī* (*ne + volō*), *to be unwilling, not to wish* (conjugated § 487), 44.

nōmen, -inis, n., *name*, 17.

nōn, adv., *not*; *nōn modo . . . sed etiam*, *not only . . . but also*, 2, 40.

nōndum, adv. (*nōn + dum*), *not yet*, 46.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj. (*nōn + nūllus*), *some*, 36.

nōnus, -a, -um, adj., *ninth* (*novem*), § 461.

noster, *nostra*, *nostrum*, poss. pron., *our* (*nōs*), 14.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj., *known, familiar*, § 461.

novitās, -ātis, f., *newness, novelty, strangeness* (**novus**), § 461.
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new*, 2 ff.
nox, noctis, f., *night*, 20.
nūbēs, -is, f., *cloud*, 18.
nūllus, -a, -um, adj. (nē + ūl-
lus), *none* (declined § 469), 42.
Nūma, -ae, f., *Numa*, the second king of Rome, 30.
numerus, -ī, m., *number*, 12.
numquam, adv., *never*, 37.
nunc, adv., *now* (compare **iam**), 12.
nūntiō, -āre, to announce, report
(nūntius), 12.
nūntius, -ī, m., *a messenger*, 27.
nūtus, -ūs, m., *nod, sign*, § 461.

O

ob, prep. w. accu., *on account of*, 36; *adverbial prefix, towards, against*.
oblīvīscor, -ī, -lītus, dep. v., *to forget*, used with an objective genitive, 38.
obses, -idis, m. and f., *hostage*, 16.
obtemperō, -āre, to obey, § 461.
obtestor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to implore*, § 461.
obtineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus
(ob + teneō), *to hold, keep, possess*, 55.
occāsus, -ūs, m., *falling, setting, the west*, § 461.
occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, to cut
down, kill, 35.
occultō, -āre, to hide, 17.
occupō, -āre, to seize, 16.
occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus,
to go to meet, resist, 43.
ōceanus, -ī, m., *the ocean*, 4.

octōdecim, indeclin. num., *eighteen*, § 461.
odium, -ī, n., *hatred*, 11.
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus
(ob + ferō), *to bring to, offer*, 55.
officium, -ī, n., *duty, office*, 56.
ōlim, adv., *once, formerly*, 10.
omnīnō, adv., *altogether, at all*, 44.
omnis, -e, adj., *every, all*, 21.
onerārius, -a, -um, adj., *of burden*; **nāvēs onerāriæ, trans-**
ports (onus), § 461.
onus, oneris, n., *load, burden, weight*, § 461.
opera, -ae, f., *work, attention*; **operam dare,** *to take pains*, 34.
opīniō, -ōnis, f., *belief, expectation, reputation*, 53.
opertet, -ēre, oportuit, impers.
v., *it is proper, one ought*, 50.
oppidānus, -a, -um, adj., *belong-*
ing to a town; *as subst., a townsman, inhabitant* (**oppid-**
um), 9.
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*, 6.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *op-*
portune, advantageous, § 461.
opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pres-
sus (ob + premō), *to over-*
whelm, 46.
oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *siege, at-*
tack (**oppūgnō**), 42.
oppūgnō, -āre (ob + pūgnō), *to*
besiege, attack, 10.
opus, operis, n., *work*, 45.
ōra, -ae, f., *shore, coast*, § 461.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech* (**ōrō**), 43.
ōrātor, -ōris, m., *speaker, pleader,*
envoy (**ōrō**), § 461.
ōrdō, -inis, m., *order, rank*, 23.
ōrō, -āre, to speak, beg, 30.

ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus,
to show, 42.

P

pācō, -āre, to pacify, subdue
(pāx), 12.

paene, adv., almost (compare fere), 38.

palam, adv., openly, publicly
(compare clam), 53.

pār, paris, adj., like, equal, 51.

parātus, -a, -um, perf. partic. of
parō, ready, prepared, 13.

parō, -āre, to make ready, pre-
pare, 12.

pars, partis, f., part, share, 21.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., small, little
(compared § 471), 1 ff.

passus, -ūs, m., step, pace; as a
measure of length about five
feet; **mille passūs, 5,000 (Ro-**
man) feet, a (Roman) mile, 30.

pater, patris, m., father, 22.

pator, -ī, passus, dep. v., suffer,
bear, allow, 44.

patria, -ae, f., native land (com-
pare pater), 2.

paucī, -ae, -a, adj. plur., few,
28.

paucitās, -ātis, f., small number
(paucī), § 461.

paulātim, adv., little by little,
gradually, 51.

paulō, adv., by a little, slightly,
23.

paulum, adv., a little, a short
distance, 41.

pāx, pācis, f., peace (pācō), 15.

pecūnia, -ae, f., money (pecus),
38.

pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd, a
flock, 17.

pedes, -itis, m., a foot-soldier;
plur., **infantry (pēs),** 36.

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj., belong-
ing to the infantry, foot (pedes),
39.

peditātus, -ūs, m., infantry, foot
(pedes), 43.

pēior, pēius, adj., comp. of ma-
lus, worse (§ 471), 24.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, to
drive, 34.

per, adverbial prefix and prep. w.
accu., **through, over, across, by**
means of, 16.

percurrō, -ere, -cucurrī or -cur-
rī, -cursūrus, to run through,
run along, § 461.

perequitō, -āre, to ride over, ride
through, § 461.

perfacilis, -e (per + facilis);
adj., **very easy,** 56.

perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus (per
+ ferō), to bear through, en-
duce, § 461.

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (per
+ faciō), to accomplish, finish,
48.

periculōsus, -a, -um, adj., full of
danger, dangerous (periculum),
37.

periculum, -ī, n., danger, 5.

perītus, -a, -um, adj., skilled,
32.

permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mān-
sūrus (per + maneō), to re-
main, stay, § 461.

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus
(per + mittō), **to let go, allow,**
permit, 46.

permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus
(per + movēō), **to move deeply,**
excite, arouse, 50.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *constant, uninterrupted, perpetual*, 54.

Persa, -ae, m., *a Persian*, 35.

Persicus, -a, -um, adj., *Persian (Persa)*, 28.

perspiciō, -ere, -spēxī, -spectus, *to see through, examine, learn*, § 461.

persuadeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, *to persuade*, 31.

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, *to frighten thoroughly, terrify*, 38.

pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, —, *to pertain to, to reach*, 50.

perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., *confusion, disorder, alarm (perturbō)*, § 461.

perturbō, -āre, *to throw into confusion, alarm*, § 461.

pervenīō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus (*per* + *veniō*), *to come through, arrive*, 35.

pēs, *pedis*, m., *foot*; *pedem* *referre*, *to retreat*, 22.

pessimus, -a, -um, superl. of *malus*, *worst* (compared § 471), 24.

petō, -ere, *petīvī* (-iī), *petītus*, *to seek, ask*, 31.

Pharnabāzus, -ī, m., *Pharnabāzus*, a Persian satrap, 35.

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin, a heavy spear*, 42.

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *flat, level*, § 461.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*, § 461.

plērique, *plēraque*, *plēraque*, adj. plur., *many, very many, the most*, 35.

plērumque, adv., *for the most part, generally*, 54.

plūrimus, -a, -um, superl. of *multus*, *most, very many* (compared § 471), 24.

plūs, *plūris*, compar. of *multus*, *more* (compared § 471; declined § 470), 24.

poena, -ae, f., *punishment*, 36.

poēta, -ae, m., *poet*, 3.

polliceor, -ērī, *pollicitus*, dep. v., *to promise*, 43.

pōnō, -ere, *posuī*, *positus*, *to place, put, put aside*, 39.

pōns, *pontis*, m., *bridge*, 19.

populus, -ī, m., *people*, 5.

porta, -ae, f., *gate*, 30.

portō, -āre, *to carry*, 11.

portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*, 30.

poscō, -ere, *poposcī*, —, *to demand, ask*, 47.

possum, *posse*, *potuī* (*potis* + *sum*), *to be able, can* (conjugated § 486), 43.

post, prep. w. accu., *after, behind*, 18.

postea, adv., *afterwards (post)*, 25.

posterior, -ius, comp. of *posterus*, *later* (compared, § 471), 24.

posterus, -a, -um, adj., *the following, next*; plur., *posterī*, *descendants*, 25.

postquam (*post* + *quam*), conj., *after*, 30.

postrēmus, -a, -um, superl. of *posterus*, *last, latest*, 24.

postrīdiē (*posterus* + *diēs*), adv., *the next day*, 49.

postulō, -āre, *to demand, ask*, 14.

potestās, -ātis, f., *power, opportunity*, 35.

potior, -īrī, *potītus*, dep. v., *to get possession of*, 37.

potius, adv., *rather*, 56.

praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prae + cēdō), *to go before, excel, surpass*, 54.

praeceps, **praecepitis**, adj., *headlong, in haste, steep*, § 461.

praeda, -ae, f., *booty*, 13.

praedīcō, -āre, *to make known, announce*, § 461.

praeſciō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (prae + faciō), *to set over, put in command of*, 35.

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (prae + mittō), *to send forward*, 35.

praemium, -ī, n., *reward*, 6.

praesertim, adv., *especially*, 55.

praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, protection, assistance*, 9.

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, —, *to excel, exhibit, perform*, 56.

praesum, -esse, -fuī (prae + sum), *to be over, in command of*, 43.

praeter, prep. w. accu., *besides, except, beyond*, 53.

praetereā, adv., *besides, more-over* (praeter), 56.

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *to press, attack, oppress*, 36.

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before*, 49.

prīmō, adv., *at first* (prīmus), 54.

prīmum, adv., *first* (prīmus), 31.

prīmus, -a, -um, superl. of prior, *first* (compared § 471), 20.

prīnceps, **prīncipis**, m., *leader, chief*, 15.

prior, **prius**, comparative, positive wanting, *former* (compared § 471), 24.

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj., *old, former*, § 461.

prinsquam (prius + quam), conj., *before*, 47.

prīvō, -āre, *to deprive*, 24.

prō, prep. w. abl., *for, for the sake of, in the place of*, 16.

prō-, adverbial prefix, *forward, before*.

probō, -āre, *to approve*, 37.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (prō + cēdō), *to go forward, advance*, 46.

procul, adv., *far, far off*, 41.

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (prō + dō), *to betray*, § 461.

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (prō + dūcō), *to lead forward, advance*, 48.

proelior, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to fight* (proelium), § 461.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle*, 10.

profectiō, -ōnis, f., *departure, setting out* (proficiscor), 43.

proficiscor, -ī, profectus, dep. v., *to set out, depart*, 37.

progredior, -ī, -gressus, dep. v., *to go forward, advance*, 41.

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus (prō + habeō), *to prevent, hinder*, 29.

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (prō + iaciō), *to throw forward*, § 461.

prope, adv. and prep. w. accu., *near*, 44.

prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus (prō + pellō), *to drive away, dislodge*, § 461.

properō, -āre, *to hurry, hasten*, 13.

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring*; **propinquī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *relatives* (prope), 48.

propior, -ius, comparative, positive wanting, *nearer* (compared § 471; **prope**), 24.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus (prō + pōnō), *to set forth, tell, offer*, 43.

propter, prep. w. accu., *on account of*, 39.

prōsequor, -ī, -secūtus (prō + sequor), dep. v., *to pursue, follow*, § 461.

prōsum, -esse, -fuī (prō + sum), *to be useful, be of advantage to, to profit* (conjugated § 486), 43.

prōvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectus, *to carry forward*, § 461.

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus (prō + videō), *to provide*, 47.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province*, 25.

proximus, -a, -um, superl. of **propior**, *nearest, next* (compared § 471), 10.

puella, -ae, f., *girl* (puer), 1.

puer, puerī, m., *boy*, 6.

pūgna, -ae, f., *battle*, 31.

pūgnō, -āre, *to fight* (pūgna), 9.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful, pretty*, 2 ff.

pulvis, -eris, m., *dust*, § 461.

putō, -āre, *to think*, 41.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus, 31.

Q

quā, rel. adv., *where*, 53.

quaerō, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, *to ask, seek*, 42.

quālis, -e, interrog. and rel. adj., *of what sort?* *as*, 55.

quam, conj., *than*; with superlatives, *as possible*, 22.

quamquam, conj., *although*, 45.

quantus, -a, -um, interrog. and rel. adj., *how great?* *as great*, *as*, 44.

quārē, interrog. and rel. phrase (quā + rē), *why?* *wherefore*, 52.

quartus, -a, -um, *fourth* (**quatuor**), 21.

-que, enclitic conj., *and*, 18.

queror, -ī, **questus**, dep. v., *to complain*, 50.

quī, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that* (declined § 476), 13.

quia, conj., *because*, 49.

quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whichever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, one, a* (declined § 478), 37.

quidem, adv., *indeed, in fact*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not even*, 45.

quīēs, -ētis, f., *rest, sleep*, 19.

quīn, conj., *but that, from, without* (used chiefly after negative expressions of doubting and hindering, §§ 270, 271), 33.

Quīntus, -ī, m., *Quintus*.

quīs (**quī**), (**quae**), **quid** (**quod**), interrog. pron., *who?* (for use of forms see § 136 a, b), 14.

quisquam, —, **quidquam** (**quodquam**), indef. pron., *any one, anything* (used chiefly in sentences in which a negative is expressed or implied; declined § 478), 41.

quisque, **quaeque**, **quidque** (**quodque**), indef. pron., *each, every* (declined § 478), 44.

quisquis, —, **quidquid**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever* (declined § 476), 52.

quō, interrog. and rel. adv., *whither? to what place? into which place, where*, 43.

quō, conj., *in order that* (used to introduce a purpose clause which contains a comparative, § 280 b), 35.

quoniam, conj., *since, because*, 49.

quoque, conj., *also, too*; following the word to which it belongs, 5.

quot, indeclin. interrog. adj., *how many? relative, as many as*, 36.

R

ratio, -ōnis, f., *reason, plan, method*, 33.

re-, **red-**, adverbial prefix, *back, again*.

rebellō, -ōnis, f. (re + bellum), *renewal of war, revolt*, § 461.

receptus, -ūs, m., *a retreat, refuge*, § 461.

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus (re + capiō), *to take back, recover*; **sē recipere**, *to betake one's self*, 35.

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (re + dō), *to return, give back*, 32.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (re + eō), *to go back, retire, return*, 52.

reditus, -ūs, m., *return (redeō)*, § 461.

rednecō, -ere, -dnēxī, -ductus (re + dnecō), *to bring back, lead back*, 35.

referō, -ferre, -retulī, -relātus (re + ferō), *to carry back, re-*

port; **pedem referre**, *to retire, retreat*, 51.

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus (re + faciō), *to make over, repair, rebuild*, § 461.

rēgina, -ae, f., *queen (rēx)*, 2.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *region, direction*, 27.

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., *royal (rēx)*, 39.

rēgnum, -ī, n., *kingdom (rēgnō)*, 55.

Rēgulus, -ī, m., *Regulus*, a famous Roman, 32.

relinquō, -ere, -reliquī, -relictus, *to leave, abandon*, 34.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, left*, 14.

remaneō, -ēre, -mansī, -mānsūrus (re + maneō), *to stay behind, remain*, § 461.

Rēmī, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Remi*, a people of Belgic Gaul, 13.

remigrō, -āre, *to return, move back*, § 461.

remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (re + mittō), *to send back*, § 461.

removeō, -ēre, -movī, -mōtus, *to move back, remove*, § 461.

rēmus, -ī, m., *oar*, § 461.

renūntiō, -āre (re + nūntiō), *to take back word, report*, 31.

reperiō, -īre, -repperī, -reperitus, *to find out, learn*, 49.

reportō, -āre (re + portō), *to carry back*, § 461.

rēs, **rei**, f., *matter, affair, business, thing*; **rēs militāris**, *the art of war, military science*; **rēs pūblica**, *the state*, 26.

respondeō, -ēre, -spōndī, -spōnsus, *to answer, reply*, 39.

revertor, revertī, reversus, dep. v., *to return*; in the perfect system the active forms **revertī, reverteram**, etc., are used, 42.
revocō, -āre (re + vocō), *to call back, recall*, 35.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king* (rēgnō), 15.
Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*, 27.
rīpa, -ae, f., *bank*, 19.
rogō, -āre, *to ask, request*, 18.
Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*, 6.
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman* (Rōma), 5.
rosa, -ae, f., *a rose*, 1.
rota, -ae, f., *wheel*, § 461.
rūrsus, adv., *back, again*, 32.

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum, adj., *sacred, holy*, 7.
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m., *priest* (sacer), 16.
saepe, adv., *often*, 28.
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*, § 461.
Saguntum, -ī, n., *Saguntum*, a city in Spain, 33.
salūs, -ūtis, f., *safety*, 42.
sapienter, adv., *wisely*, 25.
satis, adv., *enough*, 35.
scapha, -ae, f., *skiff, boat*, § 461.
sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, *to know*, a fact (compare cōgnōscō), 34.
Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., *Scipio*, the name of a famous Roman family, 39.
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*, 5.
secundus, -a, -um, adj., *following, favorable* (sequor), 24.
sed, conj., *but*, 2.
semper, adv., *always*, 6.
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate* (senex), 32.

senex, senis, m., *old man* (declined p. 91, n. 1), 26.
sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, view, purpose* (sentīō), 32.
sentīō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *to feel, perceive, think*, 35.
septem, indeclin. adj., *seven*, 20.
septentrionēs, -um, n. plur., *the seven plow-oxen* (the stars in the constellation of the Great Bear), *the north*, § 461.
septimus, -a, -um, adj., *seventh* (septem), 20.
sequor, -ī, secūtus, dep. v., *to follow*, 37.
servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery, servitude* (servus), 55.
servō, -āre, *to save, preserve*, 5.
servus, -ī, m., *slave*, 4.
sī, conj., *if*, 29.
sic, adv., *so*, 38.
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*, 35.
signum, -ī, n., *sign, standard*; **signa inferre**, *to advance, charge*, 29.
silentium, -ī, n., *silence*, 40.
silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest*, 2.
similis, -e, adj., *like, similar to* (compared § 471), 23.
simul, adv., *at the same time*; **simul ac** (atque), *at the same time as, as soon as*, 34.
sine, prep. w. abl., *without*, 10.
singulāris, -e, adj., *single*, § 461.
singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one by one, singly*, 53.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left hand*, 26.
socius, -ī, m., *ally*, 14.
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*, 41.
soleō, -ēre, solitus, semi-dep. v., *to be accustomed, be wont*, 37.

- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., *alone, only* (declined § 469), 52.
- solvō**, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *to unbind, loose, weigh anchor*, § 461.
- spatium**, -ī, n., *space*, § 461.
- speciēs**, -eī, f., *sight, appearance*, § 461.
- speculātōrius**, -a, -um, adj., *scouting*, § 461.
- spērō**, -āre, *to hope* (spēs), 41.
- spēs**, speī, f., *hope*, 29.
- spoliō**, -āre, *to strip, despoil*, 24.
- stabilitās**, -ātis, f., *firmness, steadiness*, § 461.
- statim**, adv., *at once, immediately*, 30.
- statiō**, -ōnis, f., *post, guard, duty*, § 461.
- strepitus**, -ūs, m., *noise, din, uproar*, § 461.
- studeō**, -ēre, studuī, —, *to be eager for, desire* (studium), 55.
- studium**, -ī, n., *eagerness, devotion, zeal*, 21.
- sub**, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu. and abl., *under, to the foot of, at the foot of*, 34.
- subdūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (sub + dūcō), *to lead up, draw up*, § 461.
- subiciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus (sub + iaciō), *to throw under, place under*, § 461.
- subitō**, adv., *suddenly* (subitus), 25.
- subitus** -a -um, adj., *sudden, unexpectedly*, 54.
- subministrō**, -āre, *to supply, furnish*, § 461.
- submitto**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus (sub + mittō), *to send up, send to one's assistance*, § 461.
- submoveō**, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus (sub + moveō), *to drive off, dislodge*, § 461.
- subsequor**, -ī, -secūtus (sub + sequor), dep. v., *to follow closely*, § 461.
- subsidiū**, -ī, n., *reserve, support, resource*, 44.
- succēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus (sub + cēdō), *to come up, approach, take the place of*, 51.
- Snēbī**, -ōrum, m. plur., *the Suebians, a powerful German people*, 41.
- suī**, sibi, sē (sēsē), sē, reflexive pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it* (declined § 474), 40.
- summus**, -a, -um, superl. of **superus**, *highest, the top of* (compared § 471), 24.
- Superbus**, -ī, m., *the Proud, the name given King Tarquin*, 27.
- superior**, -ius, compar. of **superus**, *upper, higher* (compared § 471), 24.
- superō**, -āre, *to surpass, excel, conquer*, 11.
- supplicium**, -ī, n., *punishment*, 36.
- suprā**, adv. and prep. w. accu., *above, beyond*, 41.
- suspiciō**, -ōnis, f., *suspicion*, 53.
- suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v., *to suspect*, § 461.
- sustineō**, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus (sub + teneō), *support, hold out against, withstand*, 27.
- sustulī**, perf. indic. of **tollō**.

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his own, her own, its own* (suī), 28.

Syria, -ae, f., *Syria*, 34.

T

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind*, 41.

tam, adv., *so*, 38.

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, yet, still*, 29.

tandem, adv., *at last*, 43.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great*, 30.

tardē, adv., *slowly, late*; **paulō tardius**, *rather slowly*, § 461.

Tarentīnus, -a, -um, adj., *Tarentine*, relating to Tarentum, a city of southern Italy, 31.

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquin*, the last king of Rome, 27.

tēlum, -ī, n., *weapon, spear*, 29.

temerē, adv., *recklessly, rashly*, § 461.

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *pole* (of a chariot or wagon), § 461.

tempestās, -ātis, f., *weather, storm* (tempus), § 461.

templum, -ī, n., *temple*, 10.

tempus, -oris, n., *time*, 21.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, to hold, 27.

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young*, 7.

tergum, -ī, n., *back*, 33.

terra, -ae, f., *earth, land*, 4.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, to frighten, 20.

terror, -ōris, m., *fright, alarm*, § 461.

tertius, -a, -um, adj., *third* (trēs), 20.

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber*, 27.

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, to be afraid, fear, 28.

timidus, -a, -um, adj., *timid, frightened* (timeō), 22.

timor, -ōris, m., *fear* (timeō), 17.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, to lift up, raise, destroy, 41.

tormentum, -ī, n., *engine* (for throwing missiles), § 461.

tot, indeclin. adj., *so many*, 32.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, entire* (declined § 469), 20.

trā, = trāns-.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus (trāns + dō), *to hand over, yield up, surrender*, 33.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus (trāns + dūcō), *to lead over, lead across*, 32.

trāiectus, -ūs, m., *a crossing over, passage*, § 461.

trāns, adverbial prefix and prep. w. accu., *over, across*, 20.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus (trāns + eō), *to go over, cross*, 47.

trānsportō, -āre (trāns + portō), *to carry across*, § 461.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *a tribune*, a military officer, six of whom were attached to each legion, 26.

trīgintā, indeclin. num., *thirty*, § 461.

tristis, -e, adj., *sad*, 22.

tū, tuī, second pers. pron., *thou, you* (declined § 474), 40.

Tullia, -ae, f., *Tullia*, 1.

tum, adv., *then*, 29.

turma, -ae, f., *troop, squadron of cavalry*, § 461.

turris, -is, f., *tower*, 18.

tūtō, adv., *safely* (tūtus), 25.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe, 22.

tuus, -a, -um, pass. pron., thy, your (tū), 3.

U

ubi, rel. adv., where, when; ubi primum, as soon as, 3.

ūllus, -a, -um, adj., any (declined § 469), 52.

ulterior, -ius, comparative adj., positive wanting, farther, beyond (compared § 471; ultrā), 24.

ultimus, -a, -um, superlative of ulterior, farthest, most remote (compared § 471), 24.

ultrā, adv. and prep. w. accu., beyond, on the farther side, 54.

ultrō, adv., to the farther side, voluntarily, § 461.

ūnā, adv., along with, in company with, 54.

unde, rel. adv., whence, from which, 52.

undique, adv., from every side, everywhere, 43.

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., all together, all, § 461.

umquam, adv., ever, with a negative, 37.

ūnus, -a, -um, adj., one, sole, alone (declined § 469), 32.

urbs, urbis, f., city, 19.

ūsus, -ūs, m., use, experience, profit (ūtor), 50.

ut (utī), conj., that, in order that, so that; after expression of fear, that not, 30.

uter, utra, utrum, interrog. and rel. pron., which (of two)? (declined § 469), 33.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, pron., each (of two), both (uter), 50.

utī, = ut.

utinam, adv., used to introduce wishes, 29.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep. v., to use, enjoy, profit by; used with an abl. of means instead of direct object, 37.

utrimque, adv., on both sides, from both sides, 55.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty of, without, 24.

vadum, -ī, n., a ford; plur., shoals, § 461.

valeō, -ēre, valuī, —, to be strong, 52.

validus, -a, -um, adj., strong, 6.

Varrō, -ōnis, m., Varro, 37.

vāsto, -āre, to destroy, devastate, 11.

vehementer, adv., violently, impetuously, 36.

vel, conj. and adv., or; vel . . . vel, either, or (as you please); as adv., even, 56.

vēlōciter, adv., swiftly (velōx), 43.

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, quick, 21.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti, a tribe in northwestern Gaul, § 461.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus, to come, 34.

ventitō, -āre, to come often, keep coming, come and go, § 461.

ventus, -ī, m., wind, 27.

vēr, vēris, n., *spring*; **prīmō vēre**, at the beginning of spring, 24.

vereor, -ērī, veritus, dep. v., to fear, dread, 36.

vergō, -ere, —, —, to slope, look towards, § 461.

vērō, adv., in truth, certainly, § 461.

Vertiscus, -ī, m., *Vertiscus*, a chief of the Remi, 17.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, to turn, § 461.

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta*, a Roman goddess, 4.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., your (**vōs**), 16.

via, -ae, f., *road, way*, 1.

vīctor, -ōris, m., *victor* (**vincō**), 17.

vīctōria, -ae, f., *victory* (**vincō**) 10.

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, to see; pass., to seem, 27.

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch, guard*, 20.

vīgintī, indeclin. num., *twenty*, 23.

vīlicus, -ī, m., *steward*, 4.

vīlla, -ae, f., *country house*, 4.

vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus, to conquer, 35.

vinculum, -ī, n., *chain*, § 461.

vir, virī, m., *man*, 6.

virtūs, -ūtis, f., *manliness, courage, virtue* (**vir**), 16.

vīs, vīs, f., *force, violence*; plur. **vīrēs, -ium**, *strength, power*, § 461.

vīta, -ae, f., *life*, 3.

vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely*, 29.

vocō, -āre, to call (**vōx**), 7.

volō, velle, voluī, to wish, will (conjugated § 487), 44.

voluntās, -ātis, f., *wish, desire, consent* (**volō**), 45.

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Volusenus*, one of Caesar's military tribunes, § 461.

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice*, 16.

vulnerō, -āre, to wound (**vulnus**), 15.

vulnus, -eris, n., *a wound*, 21.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

THE principal parts of verbs and peculiarities of syntax must be learned from the preceding vocabulary and the body of the book. The numbers after verbs indicate the conjugation to which they belong.

A

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>a, art., usually not translated ; sometimes <i>quīdam</i>, <i>quaedam</i>, <i>quoddam</i>.</p> <p>about, <i>dē</i> w. abl. ; <i>circum</i> w. accu.</p> <p>abundance, <i>cōpia</i>, -ae, f.</p> <p>acceptable, <i>grātus</i>, -a, -um.</p> <p>accustomed (to be), <i>soleō</i>, 2 (§ 295) ; to grow accustomed, <i>cōsuēscō</i>, 3.</p> <p>acquainted with (to become), <i>cōgnōscō</i>, 3.</p> <p>across, <i>trāns</i> w. accu.</p> <p>act (to), <i>agō</i>, 3 ; <i>faciō</i>, 3.</p> <p>advance (to), <i>sīgna movēre</i>, <i>prōgredior</i>, 3.</p> <p>advantage of (to take), <i>ūtor</i>, 3.</p> <p>advice, <i>cōsīlium</i>, -ī, n.</p> <p>affairs, <i>rēs</i>, <i>rei</i>, f.</p> <p>afraid (to be), <i>timeō</i>, 2 ; <i>vereor</i>, 2.</p> <p>after, prep., post w. accu. ; conj., postquam, ubi, cum ; sometimes abl. abs. ; adv., inde, deinde.</p> <p>afterwards, <i>postea</i>, deinde.</p> <p>again, <i>iterum</i>, <i>rūsus</i>.</p> <p>against, <i>contrā</i> w. accu.</p> <p>agreed (to be), <i>cōnstāre</i> used impersonally.</p> | <p>aid, <i>auxilium</i>, -ī, n.</p> <p>aid (to), <i>iuvō</i>, 1.</p> <p>all, <i>omnis</i>, -e ; <i>tōtus</i>, -a, -um ; all other, <i>cēteri</i>, -ae, -a ; all sides (on), <i>undique</i>.</p> <p>allow (to), <i>permittō</i>, 3 ; <i>patior</i>, 3 ; <i>licet</i> used impersonally, 2.</p> <p>ally, <i>socius</i>, -ī, m.</p> <p>almost, <i>ferē</i>, <i>paene</i>.</p> <p>alone, <i>sōlus</i>, -a, -um.</p> <p>already, <i>iam</i>.</p> <p>also, <i>quoque</i>.</p> <p>altar, <i>āra</i>, -ae, f.</p> <p>although, cum w. subj. ; quamquam w. indic.</p> <p>altogether, <i>omnīnō</i>.</p> <p>always, <i>semper</i>.</p> <p>ambassador, <i>lēgātus</i>, -ī, m.</p> <p>among, <i>inter</i>, <i>apud</i> w. accu.</p> <p>ancestors, <i>māiōrēs</i>, m. and f.</p> <p>ancient, <i>antīquus</i>.</p> <p>and, et, atque.</p> <p>animal, <i>animal</i>, -ālis, n.</p> <p>announce (to), <i>nūntiō</i>, 1.</p> <p>another, <i>alius</i>, -a, -um.</p> <p>any, <i>ūllus</i>, -a, -um ; <i>aliquis</i>, <i>aliqua</i>, <i>aliquid</i> (<i>aliquod</i>) ; <i>quīquam</i>, —, <i>quidquam</i>.</p> |
|---|---|

appearance of (to have the), = to be like.

approach, iter, itineris, n.; aditus, -ūs, m.; adventus, -ūs, m.

approach (to), adpropinquō, 1; adeō (§ 488).

approve (to), probō, 1.

arms, arma, -ōrum, n. plur.

army, exercitus, -ūs, m.

arouse (to), excitō, 1; incitō, 1.

arrest (to), comprehendō, 3.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.

arrive (to), perveniō, 4.

as, = appositive; prō w. abl.; quam; quālis; **as long as,** dum (§ 370); **as soon as,** cum primum; simul atque (āc).

ask (to), rogō, 1; petō, 3; postulō, 1.

assemble (to), convocō, 1.

assembly, concilium, -ī, n.

assist (to), iuvō, 1.

at once, statim.

attack (to), oppugnō, 1.

attack, impetus, -ūs; oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f.

attempt (to), conor, 1.

attendant, comes, -itis, m. and f.

auxiliary troops, auxilia, -ōrum, n. plur.

avail (to be of), prōsum w. dat. (§ 486).

await (to), expectō, 1.

aware of (to be), sentiō, 4; sciō, 4.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. plur.

band, manus, -ūs, f.

barbarian, barbarus, -a, -um.

battle, pūgna, -ae, f.; proelium, -ī, n.

be (to), sum (§ 485).

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod; cum; **because of,** = abl. of cause.

before, conj., antequam; prep., ante w. accu.

beg (to), rogō, 1; petō, 3.

beginning (at the b. of), = the proper case of primum, -a, -um.

behind, post w. accu.

Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m.

believe (to), putō, 1.

belong (to), = dat. of possessor or possessive gen.

below, infrā w. accu.

besiege (to), oppugnō, 1.

best, optimus, -a, -um.

betake one's self (to), sē recipere.

between, inter w. accu.

body, corpus, -oris, n.

bold, audāx.

boldness, audācia, -ae, f.

bondage, servitus, -ūtis, f.

book, liber, librī, m.

both . . . and, et . . . et.

booty, praeda, -ae, f.

boy, puer, puerī, m.

brave, fortis, -e.

bravely, fortiter.

bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f.

break camp (to), castra movēre.

bridge, pōns, pontis, m.

bring (to), portō, 1; ferō (§ 489); inferō; **bring together,** cōgō, 3; **bring upon,** inferō.

Briton, Britannus, -ī, m.

broad, lātus, -a, -um.

brother, frāter, -tris, m.

build, aedificō, 1.
but, sed.

C

call (to), appellō, 1; vocō, 1;
call together, convocō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. plur.
camp (to pitch), castra ponere.
can, be able (to), possum (§ 486).
capture (to), expugnō, 1.
care for (to), cūrō, 1; cōsulō w. dat., 3.
carry (to), portō, 1; **carry on war**, bellum gerere; **carry out of**, dēferre.
Carthaginians, Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m. plur.
cavalry, equites, -um, m. plur.; equitātus, -ūs, m.; adj., equester, -tris, -tre.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.
challenge (to), laccessō, 3.
chance, potestās, -ātis, f.; **chances**, cāsus, ūs, m.
charge of (to be in), praesum w. dat.; **to put in c. of**, praeficiō w. dat., 3.
chase away (to), fugō, 1.
chief, princeps, -ipis, m.
children, liberī, -ōrum, m. plur.
citadel, arx, arcis, f.
citizenship, cīvitas, -ātis, f.
city, urbs, urbis, f.; oppidum, -ī, n.
client, cliēns, clientis, m.
cloud, nūbēs, -is, f.
cohort, cohors, -tis, f.
come (to), veniō, 4; **come near**, adpropinquō, 1; **come up**, succēdō, 3.
command, imperium, -ī, n.
companion, comes, -itis, m. and f.

compel (to), cōgō, 3.
complain (to), queror, 3.
conceal (to), occultō, 1.
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, f.
confident (to be), cōnfidō (§ 305).
conquer (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.
consecutive, continuus, -a, -um.
conspire (to), coniūrō, 1.
consul, cōsul, -lis, m.
contend in battle (to), dēcertō, 1.
country, patria, -ae, f.; **finēs**, -ium, m. plur.
country-house, villa, -ae, f.
courage, animus, -ī, m.; virtus, -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō, -inis, f.
cover (to), compleō, 2.
cut down (to), occidō, 3.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, n.
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um.
daughter, filia, -ae, f.
dawn, lūx, lūcis, f.
day, diēs, diēi, m.
daybreak (at), primā lūce.
daylight, lūx, lūcis, f.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, f.
decide (to), cōstituō, 3.
defeat (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.
defend (to), dēfendō, 3.
delay (to), moror, 1.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
deliver a speech (to), ōrātiōnem habēre.
demand (to), postulō, 1.
departure, profectiō, -ōnis, f.; discessus, -ūs, m.
deprive (to), privō, 1.
design of (with the), = a purpose clause.

desire (to), cupiō, 3; volō (§ 487).
desist from (to), desistō, 3; in-
 termittō, 3.
despair (to), dēspērō, 1.
destroy (to), tollō, 3.
deter (to), dēterreō, 2.
determine (to), cōstituō, 3.
devastate (to), vastō, 1.
die (to), morior, 3.
different, dissimilis, -e.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, difficultās, -ātis, f.
diligence, industria, -ae, f.; dili-
 gentia, -ae, f.
diligently, cum industriā; dili-
 genter.
disaster, clādēs, -is, f.
dislodge, pellō, 3.
dispatch (to), mittō, 3.
disperse (to), abeō.
distant (to be), absum.
district, ager, agrī, m.; regiō,
 -ōnis, f.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
doubt (to), dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um; **there**
 is no doubt, nōn est dubium.
draw up (to), cōstituō, 3.
drive (to), fugō, 1; agō, 3; pel-
 lō, 3; **drive away, out, from**,
 fugō, 1; expellō, 3.
during, accu. or abl. of time; in;
 per.
dwell (to), incolō, 3.

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque,
 quidque (quodque) (§ 478);
each of two, uterque, utraque,
 utrumque (§ 469).
eager, avidus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris,
 ācre.

eager for (to be), studeō, 2; cu-
 piō, 3.
early (in the morning), māne.
easy, facilis, -e.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
embassy, legatiō, -ōnis, f.
employ (to), ūtor, 3.
end, finis, -is, m.
endure (to), patior, 3; ferō (§ 489).
enemy, inimicus, -ī, m.; hostis,
 -is, m.
engage with (to), pūgnō 1,
 proelium committere.
England, Britannia, -ae, f.
enjoy (to), fruor, 3.
enlarge (to), augeō, 2.
enough, satis.
enter (to), intrō, 1; **enter upon**,
 ineō, incipiō, 3.
entire, tōtus, -a, -um (§ 469).
equal, aequus, -a, -um; similis, -e.
erect (to), aedificō, 1.
especially, praesertim.
establish (to), cōfirmō, 1.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.
even if, etiam sī.
exchange (to), dāre et accipere.
exhausted, dēfessus, -a, -um.
experience (to), experior, 4; pa-
 tior, 3.
experienced, perītus, -a, -um.

F

fact, rēs, rei, f.; often simply the
 neuter of hīc.
fail (to), dēficiō, 3; dēsum.
fall (to), accidō, 3; pass. of iaciō,
 3; **fall back**, pedem referre;
 cēdō, 3; revertor, 3.
fame, fāma, -ae, f.
famous, clārus, -a, -um; some-
 times ille.

far, procul, longē.
far away (to be), absum.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
farther, adj., ulterior, -ius; adv.,
 ultrā.
father, pater, patris, m.
fear (to), timeō, 2; vereor, 2.
fear, timor, -ōris, m.
fear that (for), nē.
fearlessly, sine timōre.
feel grateful (to), grātiā ha-
 bēre.
few, nōnnūllī, -ae, -a; paucī,
 -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, m.; campus, -ī,
 m.
fiercely, ātrōciter.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fight (to), pūgnō, 1.
fill up (to), complēō, 2.
finally, denique.
find (to), nancīscor, 3.
find out (to), cōgnōscō, 3.
fine, bonus, -a, -um; pulcher,
 -chra, -chrum.
finish (to), cōficiō, 3.
fire, ignis, -is, m.
first, adj., prīmus, -a, -um; **first**
of all, adv., primum; **at first**,
 primō.
five, quinque.
flank, latus, -eris, n.; cornu,
 -ūs, n.
flee (to), fugiō, 3.
fleet, classis, -is, f.
flock, grex, gregis, m.
foe, hostis, -is, m.
follow (to), sequor, 3.
following, proximus, -a, -um;
 secundus, -a, -um; hīc, haec,
 hōc.
foot, pes, pedis, m.; **foot-sol-**

diers, peditēs, -um, m. pl.;
 peditātūs, -ūs, m.
foot of, infimus, -a, -um; **to the**
foot of, sub w. accu.
for, nam; enim; quod.
for the sake of, prō w. abl.;
 causā w. gen.
force (with great), graviter.
forced marches, māgna itinera.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f.
foresight, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forget (to), oblivīscor, 3.
former (the), ille, illa, illud;
 prior, prius.
formerly, ōlim.
fortification, mūnitiō, ōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
free (to), liberō, 1.
free, liber, -era, -erum.
freedom, libertās, -ātis, f.
fresh, novus, -a, -um; integer,
 -gra, -grum.
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
frighten (to), terreō, 2.
from, ā, ab; dē; ē, ex.

G

Gallie, Gallus, -a, -um; Gallicus,
 -a, um.
garden, hortus, -ī, m.
garrison, praesidium, -ī, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
gather (to), conveniō, 4.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.
Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, m.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.;
 dux, ducis, m.
German, Germānus, -a, -um.
Germany, Germania, -ae, f.

get ready (to), parō, 1; aedificō, 1.
gift, donum, -ī, n.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give (to), dō, 1; **give an opinion**,
 sententiam dicere.
give up (to), reddō, 3; trādō, 3;
 dēsistō, 3.
gladly, laetē.
glory, laus, laudis, f.
go (to), eō (§ 488); exeō; profi-
 ciscor, 3; **go against, to meet**,
 occurrō, 3.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
goods, bona, -ōrum, n. plur.
gradually, paulātim.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.
grant (to), dō, 1.
grass, herba, -ae, f.
great, māgnus, -a, -um; clārus,
 -a, -um.
greatly, māgnoperē; vehementer.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.
ground, terra, -ae, f.
guard, custōs, -ōdis, m.

H

Haeduan, Haedui, -ōrum, m.
 plur.
halt (to), cōnsistō, 3.
hand, manus, -ūs, f.
hand over (to), trādō, 3.
handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
happen (to), fiō (§ 488).
happy, beātus, -a, -um.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hard, dūrus, -a, -um; gravis, -e;
 atrōx.
hardly, vix; fere.
haste, celeritās, -ātis, f.
hasten (to), properō, 1.

hatred, odium, -ī, n.
have (to), habeo, 2.
height, altitūdō, -inis, f.
help, auxilium, -ī, n.
here, hic.
hide (to), occultō, 1.
hill, collis, -is, m.
hinder (to), prohibeo, 2; impe-
 diō, 4.
hither, adj., citerior, -ius.
hold (to), habeo, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, m.
honor, laus, laudis, f.
hope, spēs, speī, f.
Horace, Horatius, -ī, m.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, m.
how many, quot.
hurry (to), properō, 1; contem-
 dō, 3.

I

I, egō (§ 474).
immediately, statim.
in, in w. abl.
inasmuch as, cum w. subj.; quod.
increase (to), augeō, 2.
induce (to), adducō, 3.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
inform (to), nūntiō, 1; aliquem
 certiōrem facere.
inhabit (to), incolō, 3.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m.; **in-**
habitant of a town, oppidā-
 nus.
injure (to), noceō, 2.
injury, iniūria, -ae, f.
inner, interior, -ius.

in order that, ut.
in regard to, de w. abl.
intend (to), in animō habēre ;
 volō.
interior, interior, -ius.
into, in w. accu.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.

J

javelin, pilum, -ī, n.
judge, iūdex, -icis, m.

K

keeper, custōs, -ōdis, m.
keep from (to), prohibeō, 2.
keep in check (to), contineō, 2.
kill (to), necō, 1 ; interficio, 3 ;
 occidō, 3.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
know (to), sciō, 4 ; cognōvī, 3 ;
 intellegō, 3 ; **know how**, sciō
 w. inf.

L

labor, labor, -ōris, m.
lack, inopia, -ae, f.
lacking (to be), dēsum.
land, terra, -ae, f. ; ager, agrī, m.
large, magnus, -a, -um.
latter, hīc, haec, hōc.
lay waste (to), vastō, 1.
lead (to), dūcō, 3 ; **lead across**,
 trādūcō, 3 ; **lead forth**, prō-
 dūcō, 3 ; **lead off**, dēdūcō, 3.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leading man, princeps, -ipis, m.
learn (to), audiō, 4 ; cognōscō, 3 ;
 certior fieri.
leave (to), relinquō, 3.
left, reliquus, -a, -um ; **on the**
left hand, sinister, -tra, -trum.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.

letter, epistula, -ae, f. ; litterae,
 -ārum, f. plur.
level, aequus, -a, -um.
liberate (to), liberō, 1.
liberty, libertās, -ātis, f.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.
life, vita, -ae, f. ; salūs, -ūtis, f.
light, levis, -e.
like (to), amō, 1.
like, similis, -e.
line-of-battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.
little, parvus, -a, -um ; **a little**,
 paulum ; paulō ; **a little after**,
 paulō post.
live (to), habitō, 1.
long, adj., longus, -a, -um.
long, for a long time, adv., diū.
look out for one's interests (to),
 alicui cōsulare.
lose (to), amittō, 3.
loud, magnus, -a, -um.
love (to), amō, 1.
love, amor, -ōris, m.
low, humilis, -e.

M .

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, m.
maid-servant, ancilla, -ae, f.
make (to), faciō, 3 ; efficiō, 3 ;
make an effort, conor, 1 ; ope-
 ram dare ; **make peace**, pācem
 cōfirmāre ; **make war**, bellum
 inferre, agere.
man, vir, virī, m. ; homō, -inis, m.
manage (to), administrō, 1 ; agō,
 3 ; faciō, 3.
manner, modus, -ī, m. ; ratiō,
 -ōnis, f. ; **in what manner**,
 quō modō.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march (to), iter facere ; **march**
out, exeō.

march, iter, itineris, n.
master, dominus, -ī, m.; magister, -trī, m.
meantime (in the), interim; intereā.
meet (to go to), occurrō, 3.
meet death (to), morior, 3; pass. of neco, 1; interficiō, 3; occidō, 3.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.
method, ratiō, -ōnis, f.
midnight, media nox.
mile, mille passūs.
military matters, rēs militāris.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.; argentum, -ī, n.
mother, māter, -tris, f.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
much, adv., multō.
muse, mūsa, -ae, f.
my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.
nation, natiō, -ōnis, f.
naturally, abl. nātūrā.
near, prope w. accu.; **nearer**, propior, -ius; **nearest**, proximus, -a, -um.
nearly, ferē; paene.
needful, necessārius, -a, -um.
neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, m. plur.
neither . . . nor, neque . . . neque.
neither, pron., neuter, -tra, -trum (§ 469).
Nervians, Nervīi, -ōrum, m. plur.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um; posterus, -a, -um.

night, nox, noctis, f.; **by night**, noctū.
nobility of spirit, māgnitūdō animī.
no longer, nōn diūtius.
not, nōn, neque; **not only . . . but also**, nōn modo . . . sed etiam; **not yet**, nondum.
nothing, nihil.
notice, sentiō, 4.
now, nunc, iam.
number, numerus, -ī, m.

O

obliged (to be), often expressed by the pass. periphras. conjugation.
ocean, oceanus, -ī, m.
offer, dō, 1; offerō, 3.
often, saepe.
old man, senex, senis, m.
on, in w. abl.; **on account of**, abl.
once, ōlim; **at once**, statim.
one . . . another, alius . . . alius.
on land and sea, terrā marīque.
onrush, impetus, -ūs, m.
openly, palam.
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.
opportunity, facultās, -atis, f.; potestās, -ātis, f.
opposite, adversus, -a, -um.
oppress, premō, 3; opprimō, 3.
order (to), imperō, 1; iubeō, 2;
order to furnish, imperō w. dat. of person and accu. of thing.
other, alius, alia, aliud (§ 469);
other of two, alter, -tera, -terum (§ 469).

others (the), cēterī, -ae, -a; re-
liquī, -ae, -a.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
overcome (to), superō, 1; vincō, 3.
overtake (to), cōsequor, 3.
owe, ought (to), debeō, 2.
owing (to), abl. of cause.
own (one's), suus, -a, -um.
owner, dominus, -ī, m.

P

pacify (to), pācō, 1.
part, pars, partis, f.; **for the most part**, plērumque.
pass (to let), intermittō, 3.
pass the winter (to), hiemō, 1.
patriotism, amor patriae.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -ī, m.
perpetual, perpetuus, -a, -um.
Persian, Persa, -ae, m.
persuade (to), persuādeō, 2.
pitch camp (to), castra pōnere.
place (to), conlocō, 1.
place, locus, -ī, m.; **to the same place**, eōdem.
plain, campus, -ī, m.
plan, cōsiliū, -ī, n.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pledge, fidēs, -eī, f.
plunder, praeda, -ae, f.
poet, poēta, -ae, m.
Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, m.
position, locus, -ī, m.
possession of (to get), potior, 4; occupō, 1.
possessions, rēs, rērum, f. plur.; bona, n. plur.
power, imperium, -ī, n.; potestās, -ātis, f.
praise (to), laudō, 1.

prefer (to), mālō (§ 487).
prepare (to), parō, 1; comparō, 1.
present (to be), adsum.
prevent (to), prohibeō, 2; impediō, 4.
previous, prior, prius.
priest, sacerdos, -ōtis, m.
principal man, princeps, -ipis, m.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, m.
proceed (to), prōgredior, 3; = **to begin**, instituō, 3.
promise (to), polliceor, 2.
protect (to), muniō, 4.
protection, praesidium, -ī, n.
provision (to make), subsidia parāre; provideō, 2.
provoke (to), lacessō, 3.
punishment, poena, -ae, f.
purpose (to no), frūstrā.
pursue (to), sequor, 3.
put in command (to), praeficiō, 3.
put to flight (to), fugō, 1.

Q

quantity, cōpia, -ae, f.; multus, -a, -um.
queen, regīna, -ae, f.
quickly, celeriter.
quiet, quiēs, -ētis, f.

R

rain, aqua dē caelō.
rather than, potius quam.
reach (to), perveniō, 4.
read (to), legō, 3.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.
ready (to get), parō, 1.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
recall (to), revocō, 1.
receive (to), accipiō, 3.

recognise (to), cōgnōscō, 3.
regard to (with), dē w. abl.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
relieve (to), succēdō, 3.
remain (to), manēō, 2.
remember (to), in memoriā tenēre, habēre.
remove (to), tollō, 3.
reply (to), respondeō, 2.
report (to), nūntiō, renūntiō, 1.
reputation, fāma, -ae, f.
rest (the), cēteri, -ae, -a; reliquī, -ae, -a.
retreat (to), dēcēdō, 3; pedem referre.
return (to), reddō, 3; = **come back**, revertor, 3; redeō.
revolution, novae rēs, f. plur.
reward, praemium, -ī, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, m.
ridge, iugum, -ī, n.
right, iūs, iūris, n.
right hand (on the), dexter, -tra, -trum.
rise (to), orior, 4.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.; **by the shortest road**, quā proximum iter est.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
rose, rōsa, -ae, f.
royal power, rēgnum, -ī, n.
rule (as a), plērumque.
run together (to), concurrō, 3;
run away, fugiō, 3.

S

sacred, sacer, -era, -crum.
sad, tristis, -e.
safety (in), incolumis, -e.
sail (to), nāvigiō, 1.

sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
sake of (for the), causā w. gen.
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.
same, idem, eadem, idem (§ 475).
savage, atrōx.
save (to), servō, 1.
say (to), dicō, 3; **said he**, inquit.
scarcity, inopia, -ae, f.
sea, mare, maris, n.
secretly, clam.
see (to), videō, 2.
seek (to), petō, 3; quaerō, 3.
seem (to), videor, 2.
seize (to), occupō, 1.
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
send (to), mittō, 3; **send forward**, praemittō, 3.
set fire to (to), incendō, 3.
set forth (to), proficiscor, 3.
set free (to), liberō, 1.
set to work (to), incipiō, 3; coepi.
set out (to), proficiscor, 3.
seven, septem.
several, singulī, -ae, -a; nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.
severe, gravis, -e.
severely, graviter.
shield, scūtum, -ī, n.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -e; **in a short time**, celeriter; **by the shortest road**, quā proximum iter est.
shout, clāmor, -ōris, m.
show (to), dēmōnstrō, 1; ostendō, 3.
Sicily, Sicīlia, -ae, f.
sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
side, latus, -eris, n.; **on all sides**, undique.
signal, sīgnum, -ī, n.

silence, silentium, -ī, n.; **in silence**, silentiō.

since, cum; quod.

slaughter, caedēs, -is, f.

slave, servus, -a, -um.

slay (to), occidō, 3; interficiō, 3.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, tam, ita; = **therefore**, itaque;

so many, tot; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um.

soldier, miles, -itis, m.

some (one), aliquis, -qua, -quid (-quod); quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam); **some . . . others**; aliī . . . aliī.

son, filius, -ī, m.

soon, mox.

sort, modus, -ī, m.; **of this sort**, tālis, -e; ēiusmodī.

Spaniards, Hispānī, -ōrum, m. plur.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, f.; **to make a speech**, ōrātiōnem habēre.

speed, celeritās, -ātis, f.

spirit, animus, -ī, m.

spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre.

spring (at the beginning of), primō vĕre.

state, civitās, -ātis, f.

station (to), conlocō, 1; cōnstituō, 3.

stay (to), maneō, 2.

steward, vilicus, -ī, m.

still, sed, tamen.

stir up (to), incitō, 1; excitō, 1.

stop (to), intermittō, 3.

storm (to), oppūgnō, 1.

storming, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f.

story, fābula, -ae, f.

strange, novus, -a, -um.

strengthen (to), cōnfirmō, 1.

strong, validus, -a, -um; **to be strong**, valeō, 2.

subdue (to), pācō, 1; superō, 1; vincō, 3.

succeed (to), efficere ut.

successfully, fēliciter.

such, tālis, -e; is, ea, id.

suddenly, subitō, imprōvisō.

sue for (to), petō, 3.

suitable, suited, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -ātis, f.

sun, sōl, sōlis, m.

superior (to be), praecēdō, 3.

supply, cōpia, -ae, f.; **supplies**, cōpia; frūmentum, -ī, n.

support, subsidium, -ī, n.

surrender, sē dēdere.

surround (to), circumveniō, 4; circumdō, 3.

suspicion, suspiciō, -ōnis, f.

sustain (to), sustineō, 2.

swift, vĕlōx.

swiftly, celeriter.

sword, gladius, -ī, m.

T

take by storm (to), expūgnō, 1.

take place (to), fiō (§ 488).

take possession of (to), occupō, 1.

teacher, magister, -trī, m.

tell (to), narrō, 1; dīcō, 3.

temple, templum, -ī, n.

ten, decem.

tender, tener, -era, -erum.

terrify (to), terreō, 2.

territory, finēs, -ium, m. plur.

than, quam; abl. case.

thank (to), grātiās agere.

that, in purpose or result clauses, ut; after verbs of fearing, nē;

after verbs of doubting, etc.,
quīn; **that not**, nē, ut nōn;
after verbs of fearing, ut.
that (one), ille, illa, illud; is, ea,
id (§ 475); **that (of yours)**, iste,
ista, istud (§ 475).
their, gen. plur. of is; reflexive
suus, -a, -um.
then, deinde; inde; tum.
there, ibi.
therefore, itaque.
think (to), putō, 1.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirty, trīgintā.
this, hīc, haec, hōc (§ 475).
though, cum w. subj.; quam-
quam.
thousand, mille.
three, trēs, tria.
throughout, per w. accu.
thus, ita, sic, hōc modō.
time, tempus, -oris, n.
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.
to, dat. case; ad, in w. accu.; ex-
pressing purpose, ut w. subj.,
ad w. gerundive, causā w. gen.
of gerund or gerundive, supine.
today, hodiē.
together with, cum w. abl.;
ūnā cum w. abl.
top of, summus, -a, -um.
toward, ad w. accu.
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.; urbs, ur-
bis f.
townsman, oppidānus, -ī, m.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
tree, arbor, -oris, f.
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, m.
trust (to), cōnfidō, 3.
try (to), conor, 1.

turn one's back (to), terga ver-
tere, dare.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
twenty-five, quinque et vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo (§ 473);
which of two, uter, utra,
utrum (§ 469); **each of two**.
uterque, utraque, utrumque.

U

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
undergo (to), sustineō, 2.
undeserved, indignus, -a, -um.
unhappy, miser, -era, -erum.
unharmed, incolumis, -e.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, -e.
until, dum.
unwilling (to be), nōlō (§ 487).
use, ūsus, -ūs, m.
used to, etc., imperfect tense;
soleō, 2.
useful, predicate dat. of ūsus.

V

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.; fortitūdō,
-inis, f.
very, = superlative degree; ipse,
ipsa, ipsum (§ 475).
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
voice, vox, vocis, f.

W

wait for (to), expectō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -ī, m.; moenia,
-ium, n. plur.
wander (to), errō, 1.
war, warfare, bellum, -ī, n.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.

way, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
well, bene.
what? quid.
when, ubi; cum.
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
which (of two), uter, utra, utrum (§ 469).
while, dum.
who, which, what, rel., quī, quae, quod (§ 476); interrog., quis, quid (§ 477).
whosoever, quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, coniūnx, -iugis, f.
will, voluntās, -ātis, f.; **against one's will**, contrā voluntātem; invītus, -a, -um.
wind, ventus, -ī, m.
wing, cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, hiems, hiemis, f.
winter-quarters, hiberna, -ōrum, n. plur.
wisely, sapienter.
wish, volō (§ 487); cupiō, 3.
with, cum w. abl.

withdraw (to), cēdō, 3; discēdō, 3; pedem referre.
within, in w. abl.; of time, abl. case.
without, sine w. abl.
withstand, sustineō, 2.
wolf, lupus, -ī, m.; **she-wolf**, lupa, -ae, f.
woman, mulier, -eris, f.
wood, silva, -ae, f.
word, verbum, -ī, n.
work (to), labōrō, 1; faciō, 3.
work, opus, operis, n.
would that, = optative subj. with or without utinam (§ 242).
wound (to), vulnerō, 1; **wounded**, vulnerātus, -a, -um.
wrong, iniūria, -ae, f.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.
you, tū; plur. vōs (§ 474).
young man, iuvenis, -is, m.; adulēscēns, -entis, m.
your, tuus, -a, -um; vester, -tra, -trum.
youth, iuvenis, -is, m.

(1)

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES

*A New Series of Latin and Greek Texts for
Secondary Schools, under the editorial charge of*

John Henry Wright, A. M., LL. D., Harvard University

Bernadotte Perrin, Ph.D., LL.D., Yale University

Andrew Fleming West, Ph.D., LL.D., Princeton University

These names guarantee the highest standard of scholarship and pedagogic fitness.

The whole series throughout is based on the lines laid down in the Report of the Committee of Twelve of the American Philological Association to the National Educational Association.

These lines are now universally accepted as defining the ideal classical course for secondary schools. The Twentieth Century Classical Texts satisfy at every point this universal requirement.

The methods of teaching Latin and Greek as revised and now adopted by American educators call for a less pedantic, more humanistic style, dominantly literary in spirit, giving a clear, forceful impression of ancient life and thought. The modern secondary text-book is not merely grammatical, but also historical; fitted to arouse living enthusiasm for the great masterpieces of ancient thought and for their exquisite literary dress.

All this, recently focused in the action of the National Educational Association, is now embodied for the first time in this Series, edited by representative scholars of the universities that have had most to do with classical culture in America.

The general editors and their colleagues are all practical teachers, originators, and leaders in the courses now pursued in our secondary-school system.

Hence, the Twentieth Century Classical Series offers the simplest, most practical, and up-to-date Latin and Greek books ever prepared for American schools.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.

TWENTIETH CENTURY TEXT-BOOKS.

THE CLASSICAL SERIES.

A School Grammar of Attic Greek.

By THOMAS DWIGHT GOODELL, Ph. D., Professor of Greek in Yale University. 12mo. Cloth, \$1.50 net.

This is the only Greek Grammar that contains the modern knowledge of the subject, and sets forth the modern methods of teaching it.

Goodell's Greek Grammar does this thoroughly, accurately, and simply. It is written by a distinguished Greek scholar—a successor of Woolsey, Hadley, and Packard—who has had years of experience in secondary schools and is to-day in closest touch with them.

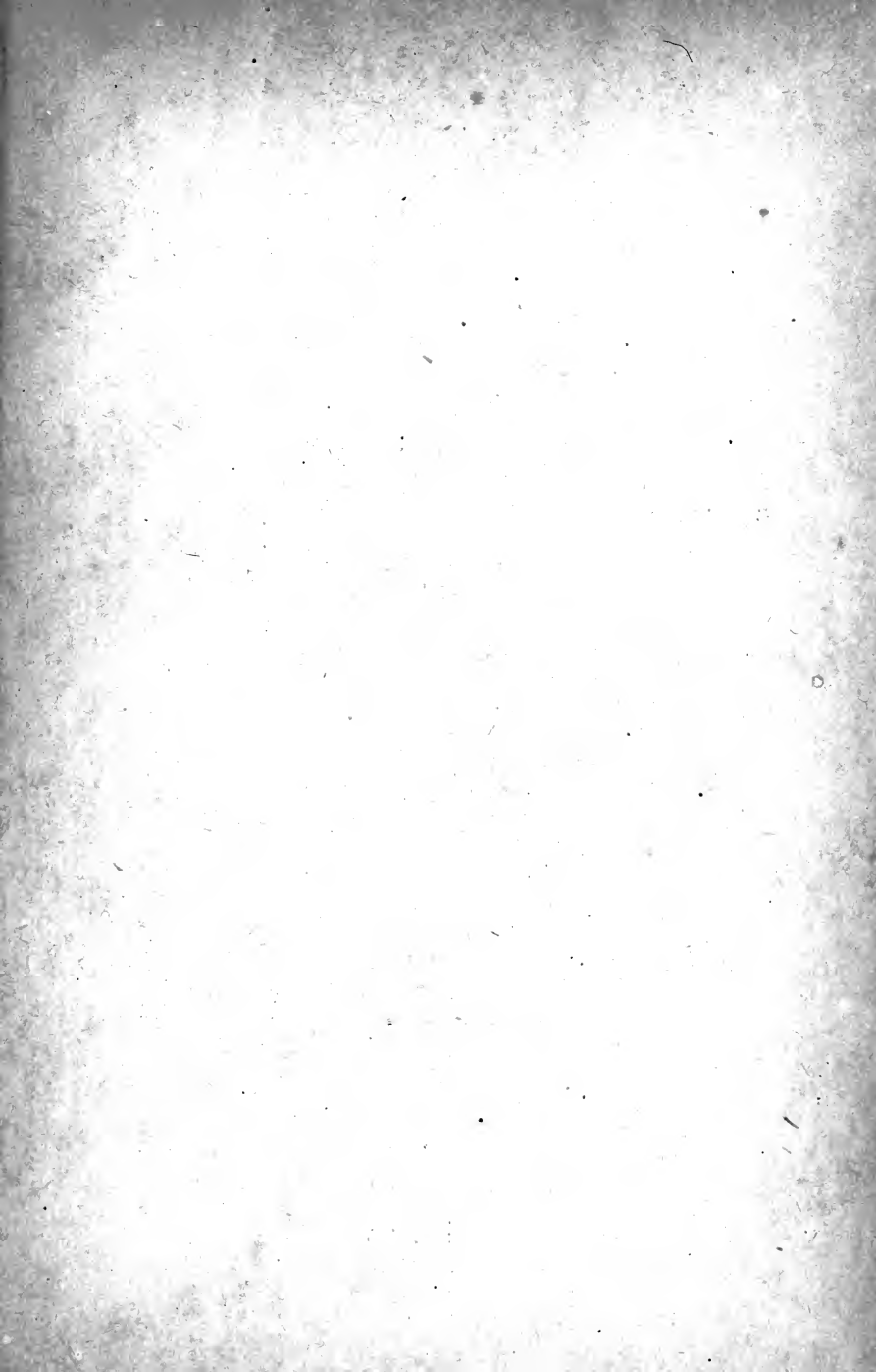
Intended primarily for such schools, this book is made as plain as possible. Rarer forms and principles of syntax, such as are naturally explained in lexicon or notes, are here omitted; classification and terminology have been much simplified.

Yet this Grammar supplies all that is needed for reading the drama and Attic prose commonly studied in freshman and sophomore years.

Sentences are classified by form instead of by function. In like manner, subordinate clauses are classified first by the introductory word, then by mode and tense. Not only is this better scientifically, but the result is a more concrete and intelligible system for young students.

Larger and plainer type is used, especially for the Greek, than in any other Greek Grammar. Of this larger print the book contains about three hundred pages.

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY, NEW YORK.





YB 00420

M250121

760

M821

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

